



**J-series™ Services Router**

## **Getting Started Guide**

*Release 7.5*

**Juniper Networks, Inc.**

1194 North Mathilda Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA

408-745-2000

**[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)**

Part Number: 530-014840-01, Revision 1

This product includes the Envoy SNMP Engine, developed by Epilogue Technology, an Integrated Systems Company. Copyright © 1986-1997, Epilogue Technology Corporation. All rights reserved. This program and its documentation were developed at private expense, and no part of them is in the public domain.

This product includes memory allocation software developed by Mark Moraes, copyright © 1988, 1989, 1993, University of Toronto.

This product includes FreeBSD software developed by the University of California, Berkeley, and its contributors. All of the documentation and software included in the 4.4BSD and 4.4BSD-Lite Releases is copyrighted by the Regents of the University of California. Copyright © 1979, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994. The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

GateD software copyright © 1995, the Regents of the University. All rights reserved. Gate Daemon was originated and developed through release 3.0 by Cornell University and its collaborators. Gated is based on Kirton's EGP, UC Berkeley's routing daemon (routed), and DCN's HELLO routing protocol. Development of Gated has been supported in part by the National Science Foundation. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1988, Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1991, D. L. S. Associates.

This product includes software developed by Maker Communications, Inc., Copyright © 1996, 1997, Maker Communications, Inc.

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, NetScreen, NetScreen Technologies, the NetScreen logo, NetScreen-Global Pro, ScreenOS, and GigaScreen are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

The following are trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc.: ERX, ESP, E-series, Instant Virtual Extranet, Internet Processor, J2300, J4300, J6300, J-Protect, J-series, J-Web, JUNOS, JUNOScope, JUNOScript, JUNOSe, M5, M7i, M10, M10i, M20, M40, M40e, M160, M320, M-series, MMD, NetScreen-5GT, NetScreen-5XP, NetScreen-5XT, NetScreen-25, NetScreen-50, NetScreen-204, NetScreen-208, NetScreen-500, NetScreen-5200, NetScreen-5400, NetScreen-IDP 10, NetScreen-IDP 100, NetScreen-IDP 500, NetScreen-Remote Security Client, NetScreen-Remote VPN Client, NetScreen-SA 1000 Series, NetScreen-SA 3000 Series, NetScreen-SA 5000 Series, NetScreen-SA Central Manager, NetScreen Secure Access, NetScreen-SM 3000, NetScreen-Security Manager, NMC-RX, SDX, Stateful Signature, T320, T640, T-series, and TX Matrix. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners. All specifications are subject to change without notice.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Copyright © 2006, Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

*J-series™ Services Router Getting Started Guide*, Release 7.5  
Copyright © 2006, Juniper Networks, Inc.  
All rights reserved. Printed in USA.

Writing: Nidhi Bhargava, Michael Bushong, Taffy Everts, Walter Goralski, Joshua Kim, Jerry Isaac, Archana Maheshwari, Maya Devi, Laura Phillips, Cheryl Potter, Frank Reade, Swapna Steiger, and Alan Thwigg  
Editing: Taffy Everts and Stella Hackell  
Illustration: Faith Bradford Brown and Nathaniel Woodward  
Cover Design: Edmonds Design

Revision History  
9 January 2006—Revision 1.

The information in this document is current as of the date listed in the revision history.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Products made or sold by Juniper Networks (including the ERX-310, ERX-705, ERX-710, ERX-1410, ERX-1440, M5, M7i, M10, M10i, M20, M40, M40e, M160, M320, and T320 routers, T640 routing node, and the JUNOS and SDX-300 software) or components thereof might be covered by one or more of the following patents that are owned by or licensed to Juniper Networks: U.S. Patent Nos. 5,473,599, 5,905,725, 5,909,440, 6,192,051, 6,333,650, 6,359,479, 6,406,312, 6,429,706, 6,459,579, 6,493,347, 6,538,518, 6,538,899, 6,552,918, 6,567,902, 6,578,186, and 6,590,785.

## YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. The JUNOS software has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

## SOFTWARE LICENSE

The terms and conditions for using this software are described in the software license contained in the acknowledgment to your purchase order or, to the extent applicable, to any reseller agreement or end-user purchase agreement executed between you and Juniper Networks. By using this software, you indicate that you understand and agree to be bound by those terms and conditions. Generally speaking, the software license restricts the manner in which you are permitted to use the software and may contain prohibitions against certain uses. The software license may state conditions under which the license is automatically terminated. You should consult the license for further details. For complete product documentation, please see the Juniper Networks Web site at [www.juniper.net/techpubs](http://www.juniper.net/techpubs).

## End User License Agreement

READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") BEFORE DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE OR OTHERWISE EXPRESSING YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, YOU (AS CUSTOMER OR IF YOU ARE NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT OR CANNOT AGREE TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, THEN (A) DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, OR USE THE SOFTWARE, AND (B) YOU MAY CONTACT JUNIPER NETWORKS REGARDING LICENSE TERMS.

1. **The Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are Juniper Networks, Inc. and its subsidiaries (collectively "Juniper"), and the person or organization that originally purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller the applicable license(s) for use of the Software ("Customer") (collectively, the "Parties").

2. **The Software.** In this Agreement, "Software" means the program modules and features of the Juniper or Juniper-supplied software, and updates and releases of such software, for which Customer has paid the applicable license or support fees to Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

3. **License Grant.** Subject to payment of the applicable fees and the limitations and restrictions set forth herein, Juniper grants to Customer a non-exclusive and non-transferable license, without right to sublicense, to use the Software, in executable form only, subject to the following use restrictions:

a. Customer shall use the Software solely as embedded in, and for execution on, Juniper equipment originally purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller, unless the applicable Juniper documentation expressly permits installation on non-Juniper equipment.

b. Customer shall use the Software on a single hardware chassis having a single processing unit, or as many chassis or processing units for which Customer has paid the applicable license fees.

c. Product purchase documents, paper or electronic user documentation, and/or the particular licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits to Customer's use of the Software. Such limits may restrict use to a maximum number of seats, registered endpoints, concurrent users, sessions, calls, connections, subscribers, clusters, nodes, or transactions, or require the purchase of separate licenses to use particular features, functionalities, services, applications, operations, or capabilities, or provide throughput, performance, configuration, bandwidth, interface, processing, temporal, or geographical limits. Customer's use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations and purchase of all applicable licenses.

The foregoing license is not transferable or assignable by Customer. No license is granted herein to any user who did not originally purchase the applicable license(s) for the Software from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

4. **Use Prohibitions.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the license provided herein does not permit the Customer to, and Customer agrees not to and shall not: (a) modify, unbundle, reverse engineer, or create derivative works based on the Software; (b) make unauthorized copies of the Software (except as necessary for backup purposes); (c) rent, sell, transfer, or grant any rights in and to any copy of the Software, in any form, to any third party; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels, or marks on or in any copy of the Software or any product in which the Software is embedded; (e) distribute any copy of the Software to any third party, including as may be embedded in Juniper equipment sold in the secondhand market; (f) use any 'locked' or key-restricted feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability without first purchasing the applicable license(s) and obtaining a valid key from Juniper, even if such feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability is enabled without a key; (g) distribute any key for the Software provided by Juniper to any third party; (h) use the Software in any manner that extends or is broader than the uses purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (i) use the Software on non-Juniper equipment where the Juniper documentation does not expressly permit installation on non-Juniper equipment; (j) use the Software (or make it available for use) on Juniper equipment that the Customer did not originally purchase from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (k) disclose the results of testing or benchmarking of the Software to any third party without the prior written consent of Juniper; or (l) use the Software in any manner other than as expressly provided herein.

5. **Audit.** Customer shall maintain accurate records as necessary to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by Juniper, Customer shall furnish such records to Juniper and certify its compliance with this Agreement.

6. **Confidentiality.** The Parties agree that aspects of the Software and associated documentation are the confidential property of Juniper. As such, Customer shall exercise all reasonable commercial efforts to maintain the Software and associated documentation in confidence, which at a minimum includes restricting access to the Software to Customer employees and contractors having a need to use the Software for Customer's internal business purposes.

7. **Ownership.** Juniper and Juniper's licensors, respectively, retain ownership of all right, title, and interest (including copyright) in and to the Software, associated documentation, and all copies of the Software. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes a transfer or conveyance of any right, title, or interest in the Software or associated documentation, or a sale of the Software, associated documentation, or copies of the Software.

8. **Warranty, Limitation of Liability, Disclaimer of Warranty.** The warranty applicable to the Software shall be as set forth in the warranty statement that accompanies the Software (the "Warranty Statement"). Nothing in this Agreement shall give rise to any obligation to support the Software. Support services may be purchased separately. Any such support shall be governed by a separate, written support services agreement. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF DATA, OR COSTS OR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL JUNIPER BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING FROM UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED IN THE WARRANTY STATEMENT TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES IN AND TO THE SOFTWARE (WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR OTHERWISE), INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT DOES JUNIPER WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY EQUIPMENT OR NETWORK RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT ERROR OR INTERRUPTION, OR WILL BE FREE OF VULNERABILITY TO INTRUSION OR ATTACK. In no event shall Juniper's or its suppliers' or licensors' liability to Customer, whether in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of warranty, or otherwise, exceed the price paid by Customer for the Software that gave rise to the claim, or if the Software is embedded in another Juniper product, the price paid by Customer for such other product. Customer acknowledges and agrees that Juniper has set its prices and entered into this Agreement in reliance upon the disclaimers of warranty and the limitations of liability set

forth herein, that the same reflect an allocation of risk between the Parties (including the risk that a contract remedy may fail of its essential purpose and cause consequential loss), and that the same form an essential basis of the bargain between the Parties.

9. **Termination.** Any breach of this Agreement or failure by Customer to pay any applicable fees due shall result in automatic termination of the license granted herein. Upon such termination, Customer shall destroy or return to Juniper all copies of the Software and related documentation in Customer's possession or control.

10. **Taxes.** All license fees for the Software are exclusive of taxes, withholdings, duties, or levies (collectively "Taxes"). Customer shall be responsible for paying Taxes arising from the purchase of the license, or importation or use of the Software.

11. **Export.** Customer agrees to comply with all applicable export laws and restrictions and regulations of any United States and any applicable foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. Customer shall be liable for any such violations. The version of the Software supplied to Customer may contain encryption or other capabilities restricting Customer's ability to export the Software without an export license.

12. **Commercial Computer Software.** The Software is "commercial computer software" and is provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States government is subject to restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in DFARS 227.7201 through 227.7202-4, FAR 12.212, FAR 27.405(b)(2), FAR 52.227-19, or FAR 52.227-14(ALT III) as applicable.

13. **Interface Information.** To the extent required by applicable law, and at Customer's written request, Juniper shall provide Customer with the interface information needed to achieve interoperability between the Software and another independently created program, on payment of applicable fee, if any. Customer shall observe strict obligations of confidentiality with respect to such information and shall use such information in compliance with any applicable terms and conditions upon which Juniper makes such information available.

14. **Third Party Software.** Any licensor of Juniper whose software is embedded in the Software and any supplier of Juniper whose products or technology are embedded in (or services are accessed by) the Software shall be a third party beneficiary with respect to this Agreement, and such licensor or vendor shall have the right to enforce this Agreement in its own name as if it were Juniper. In addition, certain third party software may be provided with the Software and is subject to the accompanying license(s), if any, of its respective owner(s). To the extent portions of the Software are distributed under and subject to open source licenses obligating Juniper to make the source code for such portions publicly available (such as the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or the GNU Library General Public License ("LGPL")), Juniper will make such source code portions (including Juniper modifications, as appropriate) available upon request for a period of up to three years from the date of distribution. Such request can be made in writing to Juniper Networks, Inc., 1194 N. Mathilda Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94089, ATTN: General Counsel. You may obtain a copy of the GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>, and a copy of the LGPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>.

15. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California without reference to its conflicts of laws principles. The provisions of the U.N. Convention for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to this Agreement. For any disputes arising under this Agreement, the Parties hereby consent to the personal and exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the state and federal courts within Santa Clara County, California. This Agreement constitutes the entire and sole agreement between Juniper and the Customer with respect to the Software, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous agreements relating to the Software, whether oral or written (including any inconsistent terms contained in a purchase order), except that the terms of a separate written agreement executed by an authorized Juniper representative and Customer shall govern to the extent such terms are inconsistent or conflict with terms contained herein. No modification to this Agreement nor any waiver of any rights hereunder shall be effective unless expressly assented to in writing by the party to be charged. If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid, the Parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement. This Agreement and associated documentation has been written in the English language, and the Parties agree that the English version will govern. (For Canada: Les parties aux présentes confirment leur volonté que cette convention de même que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui s'y rattache, soient rédigés en langue anglaise. (Translation: The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language)).

# Abbreviated Table of Contents

<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>xv</b>
-------------------------	-----------

## **Part 1** **J-series Overview**

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Introducing the J-series Services Router</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>System Overview</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Physical Interface Modules Overview</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Services Router User Interface Overview</b>	<b>61</b>

## **Part 2** **Installing a Services Router**

<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Preparing for Router Installation</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Installing and Connecting a Services Router</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Establishing Basic Connectivity</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Configuring Autoinstallation</b>	<b>129</b>
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Installing and Managing J-series Licenses</b>	<b>135</b>

## **Part 3** **Maintaining a Services Router**

<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware</b>	<b>179</b>

<b>Part 4</b>	<b>J-series Requirements and Specifications</b>	
	<hr/>	
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts</b>	<b>189</b>
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	<hr/>	

# Table of Contents

	<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>xv</b>
	Objectives .....	xv
	Audience.....	xvi
	Document Conventions .....	xvi
	Related Juniper Networks Documentation.....	xviii
	Documentation Feedback.....	xx
	Requesting Support.....	xx
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>J-series Overview</b>	
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Introducing the J-series Services Router</b>	<b>3</b>
	J-series Services Router Overview .....	3
	J-series Software Features and Licenses.....	6
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>System Overview</b>	<b>9</b>
	J2300 Services Router Hardware Features .....	9
	J2300 Chassis .....	9
	J2300 Routing Engine .....	12
	J2300 Boot Devices .....	13
	J2300 Boot Sequence .....	13
	J2300 Front Panel.....	13
	Juniper Networks Logo LED .....	14
	ALARM LED.....	15
	Power Button and POWER ON LED .....	15
	CONFIG Button and LED .....	16
	Console Port .....	17
	J2300 USB Port .....	17
	J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM).....	18
	J2300 LAN Ports.....	18
	J2300 Power System.....	18
	J2300 Cooling System .....	19
	J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features .....	20
	J4300 and J6300 Chassis.....	20
	Midplane.....	25
	J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine .....	25
	J4300 and J6300 Boot Devices.....	26
	J4300 and J6300 Boot Sequence.....	26

J4300 and J6300 Front Panel .....	26
Juniper Networks Logo LED .....	27
ALARM LED .....	27
Power Button and POWER ON LED .....	28
CONFIG Button and Configuration LED .....	28
Console Port .....	28
J4300 and J6300 USB Port .....	28
J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports .....	28
J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive .....	29
J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) .....	29
J4300 Power System .....	30
J6300 Power System .....	30
J4300 and J6300 Cooling System .....	31
Software Overview .....	32
Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine .....	32
Kernel and Microkernel .....	33
Processes .....	33
Management Process .....	33
Chassis Process .....	34
Routing Protocol Process .....	34
Interface Process .....	34
Forwarding Process .....	34
User Interfaces .....	34

## **Chapter 3                      Physical Interface Modules Overview                      37**

PIM Terms .....	37
J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs .....	39
J2300 Chassis PIM Summary .....	40
Dual-Port Serial Chassis .....	41
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis .....	42
Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis .....	43
Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis .....	44
Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis .....	46
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis .....	47
J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIMs .....	49
Field-Replaceable PIM Summary .....	49
Dual-Port Serial PIM .....	50
Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM .....	51
T3 or E3 PIM .....	53
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM .....	54
4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs .....	55
ADSL PIM .....	57
G.SHDSL PIM .....	59

## **Chapter 4                      Services Router User Interface Overview                      61**

User Interface Overview .....	61
J-Web Overview .....	61
CLI Overview .....	62



Comparison of Configuration Interfaces .....	62
Before You Begin.....	64
Using the J-Web Interface .....	64
Starting the J-Web Interface .....	65
J-Web Layout .....	65
J-Web Sessions .....	69
Using the Command-Line Interface .....	69
CLI Command Hierarchy .....	69
Starting the CLI.....	70
CLI Operational Mode .....	71
CLI Configuration Mode .....	72
CLI Basics.....	73
Editing Keystrokes .....	73
Command Completion .....	74
Online Help .....	74
Configuring the CLI Environment.....	75

## Part 2

## Installing a Services Router

---

### Chapter 5

### Preparing for Router Installation 81

---

General Site Guidelines .....	81
Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements.....	82
Rack Requirements .....	82
Rack Size and Strength .....	82
Spacing of Mounting Holes.....	83
Connection to Building Structure .....	83
Router Environmental Tolerances .....	83
Fire Safety Requirements .....	84
Fire Suppression .....	84
Fire Suppression Equipment .....	84
Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications .....	85
Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines .....	85
Signaling Limitations.....	86
Radio Frequency Interference.....	86
Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	86
Router Power Requirements .....	86
AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications .....	87
DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications.....	88
Network Cable Specifications.....	89
ISDN Provisioning .....	90
Site Preparation Checklist.....	90

### Chapter 6

### Installing and Connecting a Services Router 91

---

Before You Begin.....	91
Unpacking the J-series Services Router .....	92
Installing the J2300 Services Router.....	94
Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk.....	94
Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall .....	95

Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack .....	96
Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router .....	97
Connecting Interface Cables to the Services Router .....	98
Chassis Grounding .....	99
Connecting Power to the Services Router .....	99
Connecting AC Power .....	100
Connecting DC Power .....	101
Powering a Services Router On and Off .....	105

## **Chapter 7                      Establishing Basic Connectivity                      107**

Basic Connectivity Terms .....	107
Basic Connectivity Overview .....	108
Router Identification .....	109
Root Password .....	109
Time Zone and System Time .....	109
Network Settings .....	109
Default Gateway .....	110
Backup Router .....	110
Loopback Address .....	110
Management Interface Address .....	111
Before Initial Configuration .....	111
During Initial Configuration .....	111
After Initial Configuration .....	111
Management Access .....	112
Secure Access .....	112
Before You Begin .....	113
Configuring the Services Router with J-Web Quick Configuration .....	114
Connecting to the J-Web Interface .....	114
Configuring Basic Settings with Quick Configuration .....	115
Configuring Secure Web Access with Quick Configuration .....	118
Configuring the Services Router with a Configuration Editor .....	120
Connecting to the CLI .....	120
Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor .....	122
Verifying Basic Connectivity .....	127
Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations .....	127

## **Chapter 8                      Configuring Autoinstallation                      129**

Autoinstallation Terms .....	129
Autoinstallation Overview .....	130
Autoinstallation Interfaces .....	130
Autoinstallation Process on Services Router .....	130
Automatic Configuration of a New Services Router .....	131
Before You Begin .....	131
Configuring Autoinstallation with a Configuration Editor .....	132
Verifying Autoinstallation .....	133
Verifying Autoinstallation Status .....	133

## **Chapter 9                      Installing and Managing J-series Licenses                      135**

J-series License Overview .....	135
Software Feature Licenses .....	136
Port Licenses .....	136
License Key Components .....	137
Before You Begin.....	137
Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	138
Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	140
Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface .....	140
Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface.....	141
Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface.....	141
Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI .....	141
Adding New Licenses with the CLI.....	141
Deleting a License with the CLI.....	142
Saving License Keys with the CLI .....	142
Verifying J-series License Management .....	142
Displaying Installed Licenses.....	143
Displaying License Usage .....	144
Displaying Installed License Keys.....	145

## **Part 3                      Maintaining a Services Router**

## **Chapter 10                      Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components                      149**

Replacing Hardware Components.....	149
Tools and Parts Required .....	150
Replacing the Console Port Cable.....	150
Replacing a PIM .....	150
Removing a PIM.....	151
Installing a PIM .....	152
Replacing PIM Cables.....	154
Removing a PIM Cable.....	154
Installing a PIM Cable .....	154
Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	155
Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	155
Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk .....	156
Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk .....	157
Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk.....	158
Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk .....	159
Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device .....	159
Removing the USB Storage Device.....	160
Installing the USB Storage Device.....	161
Removing and Installing DRAM Modules .....	161
Removing a DRAM Module.....	163
Installing a DRAM Module .....	164
Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J2300 or J4300 Router .....	165
Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J2300 or J4300 Router .....	165
Replacing Power System Components in a J6300 Router .....	167
Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router .....	167

Removing a DC Power Supply from a J6300 Router .....	168
Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router .....	170
Installing a DC Power Supply in a J6300 Router .....	171
Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J6300 Router .....	173
Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J6300 Router .....	174
Troubleshooting Hardware Components .....	175
Chassis Alarm Conditions .....	175
Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center .....	177

## **Chapter 11                      Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware                      179**

Locating Component Serial Numbers .....	179
PIM Serial Number Label .....	181
J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels .....	181
Contacting Customer Support .....	181
Information You Might Need to Supply to JTAC .....	182
Return Procedure .....	182
Packing a Router or Component for Shipment .....	183
Tools and Parts Required .....	183
Packing the Services Router for Shipment .....	183
Packing Components for Shipment .....	184

## **Part 4                              J-series Requirements and Specifications**

### **Chapter 12                      Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts                      189**

Serial PIM Cable Specifications .....	189
RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout .....	190
RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout .....	191
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout .....	191
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout .....	192
EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout .....	193
EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout .....	194
V.35 DTE Cable Pinout .....	195
V.35 DCE Cable Pinout .....	196
X.21 DTE Cable Pinout .....	197
X.21 DCE Cable Pinout .....	197
RJ-45 Connector Pinout for the Routing Engine (Ethernet) Port .....	198
Console Port Pinouts .....	198
E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts .....	199
E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout .....	202
ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout .....	202
ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout .....	202

### **Chapter 13                      Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information                      205**

Definition of Safety Warning Levels .....	205
Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	207

General Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	207
Qualified Personnel Warning .....	208
Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage .....	209
Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	210
General Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	211
AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	212
DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines .....	212
Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies .....	213
DC Power Disconnection Warning .....	213
DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning .....	215
DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning .....	215
DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning .....	217
Grounded Equipment Warning .....	218
Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden .....	219
In Case of Electrical Accident .....	219
Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning .....	219
Power Disconnection Warning .....	221
TN Power Warning .....	222
Telecommunication Line Cord Warning .....	223
Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	225
Chassis Lifting Guidelines .....	225
Installation Instructions Warning .....	225
Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings .....	226
Ramp Warning .....	230
Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	231
General Laser Safety Guidelines .....	231
Class 1 Laser Product Warning .....	231
Class 1 LED Product Warning .....	232
Laser Beam Warning .....	233
Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning .....	234
Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings .....	235
Battery Handling Warning .....	236
Jewelry Removal Warning .....	237
Lightning Activity Warning .....	239
Operating Temperature Warning .....	240
Product Disposal Warning .....	242
Agency Approvals .....	244
Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements .....	245
Canada .....	245
Japan .....	246
Taiwan .....	246
United States .....	246
FCC Part 15 Statement .....	247
FCC Part 68 Statement .....	247
Product Reclamation and Recycling Program .....	248

## Part 5

## Index

Index .....	251
-------------	-----



# About This Guide

This preface provides the following guidelines for using the *J-series™ Services Router Getting Started Guide*:

- Objectives on page xv
- Audience on page xvi
- Document Conventions on page xvi
- Related Juniper Networks Documentation on page xviii
- Documentation Feedback on page xx
- Requesting Support on page xx

## Objectives

This guide contains an overview, basic instructions, and specifications for J-series Services Routers. It explains how to prepare your site for installation, unpack and install a Services Router and its components, power on the router, install licenses, and establish basic connectivity.



**NOTE:** This guide documents Release 7.5 of the JUNOS software. For additional information about J-series Services Routers—either corrections to or omissions from this guide—see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

J-series Services Router operations are controlled by the JUNOS Internet software. You direct the JUNOS software through either a Web browser or a command-line interface (CLI) to perform the tasks shown in Table 1.

**Table 1: Capabilities of J-series Interfaces**

J-series Interface	Capabilities
J-Web graphical browser interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Quick (basic) configuration</li><li>■ Monitoring, configuration, diagnosis, and management</li></ul>
JUNOS CLI	Monitoring, configuration, diagnosis, and management

J-series Services Router guides provide complete instructions for using the J-Web interface, but they are not a comprehensive resource for using the JUNOS CLI. For CLI information, see the JUNOS software manuals listed in “Related Juniper Networks Documentation” on page xviii.

## Audience

This guide is designed for anyone who installs and sets up a J-series Services Router or prepares a site for Services Router installation. The guide is intended for the following audiences:

- Customers with technical knowledge of and experience with networks and the Internet
- Network administrators who install, configure, and manage Internet routers but are unfamiliar with the JUNOS software
- Network administrators who install, configure, and manage products of Juniper Networks

Personnel operating the equipment must be trained and competent; must not conduct themselves in a careless, willfully negligent, or hostile manner; and must abide by the instructions provided by the documentation.

## Document Conventions

Table 2 defines the notice icons used in this guide.

**Table 2: Notice Icons**




Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.

Table 3 defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.



**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions**

Convention	Description	Examples
<b>Bold sans serif typeface</b>	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the <b>configure</b> command:  user@host> <b>configure</b>
Fixed-width typeface	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> show chassis alarms No alarms currently active
<i>Italic typeface</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduces important new terms.</li> <li>Identifies book names.</li> <li>Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions.</li> <li><i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i></li> </ul>
<i>Italic sans serif typeface</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name:  [edit] root@# <b>set system domain-name</b> <i>domain-name</i>
Sans serif typeface	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; IP addresses; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To configure a stub area, include the <b>stub</b> statement at the [edit protocols ospf area <i>area-id</i>] hierarchy level.</li> <li>The console port is labeled <b>CONSOLE</b>.</li> </ul>
< > (angle brackets)	Enclose optional keywords or variables.	stub <default-metric <i>metric</i> >;
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	broadcast   multicast  ( <i>string1</i>   <i>string2</i>   <i>string3</i> )
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only
[ ] (square brackets)	Enclose a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	community name members [ <i>community-ids</i> ]
Indentation and braces ( { } )	Identify a level in the configuration hierarchy.	[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop <i>address</i> ; retain; } } }
; (semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
<b>J-Web GUI Conventions</b>		

Convention	Description	Examples
<b>Bold typeface</b>	Represents J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ In the Logical Interfaces box, select <b>All Interfaces</b>.</li> <li>■ To cancel the configuration, click <b>Cancel</b>.</li> </ul>
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of J-Web selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Protocols &gt; Ospf</b> .

## Related Juniper Networks Documentation

J-series Services Routers are documented in four guides. Although the J-series guides provide instructions for configuring and managing a Services Router with the JUNOS CLI, they are not a comprehensive JUNOS software resource. For complete documentation of the statements and commands described in J-series guides, see the JUNOS software manuals listed in Table 4.

**Table 4: J-series Guides and Related JUNOS Software Publications**

Chapter in a J-series Guide	Corresponding JUNOS Software Manual
<b>J-series Services Router Getting Started Guide</b>	
"J-series User Interface Overview"	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
"Establishing Basic Connectivity"	
"Configuring Autoinstallation"	
<b>J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide</b>	
"Using J-Web Configuration Tools"	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
"Interfaces Overview"	■ <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>
"Configuring Network Interfaces"	■ <i>JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference</i>
"Configuring Digital Subscriber Line Interfaces"	
"Configuring Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet"	
"Configuring ISDN"	
"Routing Overview"	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols Configuration Guide</i>
"Configuring Static Routes"	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
"Configuring a RIP Network"	
"Configuring an OSPF Network"	
"Configuring the IS-IS Protocol"	
"Configuring BGP Sessions"	
<b>J-series Services Router Advanced WAN Access Configuration Guide</b>	

<b>Chapter in a J-series Guide</b>	<b>Corresponding JUNOS Software Manual</b>
“Multiprotocol Label Switching Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS MPLS Applications Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Signaling Protocols for Traffic Engineering”	■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Configuring Virtual Private Networks”	■ <i>JUNOS VPNs Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring CLNS VPNs”	
“Configuring IPSec for Secure Packet Exchange”	■ <i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>
“Multicast Overview”	<i>JUNOS Multicast Protocols Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring a Multicast Network”	<i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Configuring Data Link Switching”	■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>
“Policy Framework Overview”	<i>JUNOS Policy Framework Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Routing Policies”	<i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Configuring Stateful Firewall Filters and NAT”	■ <i>JUNOS Network Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Stateless Firewall Filters”	■ <i>JUNOS Policy Framework Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i> ■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i> ■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Class-of-Service Overview”	■ <i>JUNOS Class of Service Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring Class of Service”	■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>
<b>J-series Services Router Administration Guide</b>	
“Managing Users and Operations”	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring SNMP for Network Management”	<i>JUNOS Network Management Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring the DHCP Server”	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Configuring and Monitoring Alarms”	<i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i>
“Monitoring a Services Router”	■ <i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>
“Using Services Router Diagnostic Tools”	■ <i>JUNOS Interfaces Command Reference</i> ■ <i>JUNOS Routing Protocols and Policies Command Reference</i>
“Configuring Packet Capture”	<i>JUNOS Services Interfaces Configuration Guide</i>
“Monitoring Real-Time Performance”	<i>JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference</i>

## Documentation Feedback

---

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net), or fill out the documentation feedback form at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/docbug/docbugreport.html>. If you are using e-mail, be sure to include the following information with your comments:

- Document name
- Document part number
- Page number
- Software release version

## Requesting Support

---

For technical support, open a support case with the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/> or call 1-888-314-JTAC (from the United States, Canada, or Mexico) or 1-408-745-9500 (from elsewhere).

## **Part 1**

# **J-series Overview**

- Introducing the J-series Services Router on page 3
- System Overview on page 9
- Physical Interface Modules Overview on page 37
- Services Router User Interface Overview on page 61



## Chapter 1

# Introducing the J-series Services Router

J-series Services Routers provide stable, reliable, efficient IP routing, WAN and LAN connectivity, and management services for small to medium-sized enterprise networks. Services Routers typically connect small, branch, or regional offices to a central site router, and link Internet service provider (ISP) networks.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J-series Services Router Overview on page 3
- J-series Software Features and Licenses on page 6

### J-series Services Router Overview

---

J-series Services Routers are available in three models of increasing bandwidth, described in Table 5.

All J-series Services Routers run on the JUNOS software and are reachable through the J-Web browser interface on the JUNOS command-line interface. For details, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61.

**Table 5: J-series Models**

<b>Model</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Bandwidth</b>
J2300 Services Router	<p>Remote or branch office router.</p> <p>Smaller chassis (1 U) with a nonredundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 512 MB of memory, and a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage. Each of the following chassis types has two Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dual-Port E1 chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI S/T chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Serial chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI S/T or U chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port T1 chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI U chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis</li> <li>■ Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis</li> </ul>	Up to twice the capacity of a T1, E1, or serial interface



**Table 5: J-series Models (continued)**

<b>Model</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Bandwidth</b>
J4300 Services Router	<p>Regional or branch office router.</p> <p>Larger chassis (2 U) with a nonredundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 512 MB of memory, and a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage. In addition to two fixed Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces, this model has six open slots for the following Physical Interface Modules (PIMs):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ADSL Annex A PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ ADSL Annex B PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ Dual-Port E1 PIM</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM</li> <li>■ G.SHDSL PIM (2 ports)</li> <li>■ 4-port ISDN BRI S/T or U PIM</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Serial PIM</li> <li>■ Dual-Port T1 PIM</li> </ul>	Up to eight times the capacity of a T1, E1, or serial interface
J6300 Services Router	<p>Regional or central site router.</p> <p>Larger chassis (2 U) with an optional redundant AC or DC power supply, 256 MB to 1 GB of memory, and a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port for external storage. In addition to two fixed Fast Ethernet LAN interfaces, this model has six open slots for the following Physical Interface Modules (PIMs):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ADSL Annex A PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ ADSL Annex B PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ DS3 (T3) PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ Dual-Port E1 PIM</li> <li>■ E3 PIM (1 port)</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM</li> <li>■ G.SHDSL PIM (2 ports)</li> <li>■ 4-port ISDN BRI S/T or U PIM</li> <li>■ Dual-Port Serial PIM</li> <li>■ Dual-Port T1 PIM</li> </ul>	Up to DS3 interface capacity

## J-series Software Features and Licenses

J-series Services Routers provide the software features listed in Table 6. You must purchase a separate software license to obtain some software features. For more information about licenses, see “Installing and Managing J-series Licenses” on page 135.

**Table 6: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements**

Feature Category	J-series Feature	Separate License
<b>Internet Protocols</b>	IPv4	
	IPv6 routing and forwarding	
<b>Routing and Multicast</b>	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)	
	Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)	License required for advanced BGP
	Routing Information Protocol version 1 (RIPv1) and RIPv2	
	Static routes	
	Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)	
	Connectionless Network Services (CLNS):	
	■ End system-to-Intermediate system (ES-IS) protocol	
	■ IS-IS extensions	
	■ BGP extensions	
	■ Static routes	
	Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS):	
	■ Layer 2 and Layer 3 virtual private networks (VPNs)	
	■ VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) table labels	
	■ Traffic engineering protocols:	
	■ Label Distribution Protocol (LDP)	
	■ Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)	
	Multicast:	
	■ Internet Group Management Protocol version 3 (IGMPv3)	
	■ Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM)	
	■ Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP)	
	■ Single-source multicast	
<b>IP Address Management</b>	Static addresses	
	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	

**Table 6: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements (continued)**

<b>Feature Category</b>	<b>J-series Feature</b>	<b>Separate License</b>
<b>Encapsulation</b>	Ethernet:	
	■ Media access control (MAC) encapsulation	
	■ 802.1p tagging	
	■ Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE)	
	■ Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) for asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) or symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL)	
	■ Circuit cross-connect (CCC)	
	■ Translational cross-connect (TCC)	
	Synchronous Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)	
	Frame Relay	
	High-level Data Link Control (HDLC)	
	Serial encapsulation over RS-232, RS-449, X.21, V.35, and EIA-530 connections	
<b>Traffic Management</b>	802.1Q filtering and forwarding	
	Multilink Frame Relay	
	Multilink PPP	
	Data link switching (DLSw)	License required
<b>Security</b>	Policing and shaping	
	Class-based queuing with prioritization	
	Weighted random early detection (WRED)	
	Queuing by virtual LAN (VLAN), data link connection identifier (DLCI), interface, or bundle	
	Network attack detection	
	Denial-of-service (DoS) and distributed DoS protection	
	Generic routing encapsulation (GRE), IP-over-IP, and IP Security (IPSec) tunnels	License required for IPSec
	56-bit Data Encryption Standard (DES) and 168-bit 3DES encryption	
	MD5 and Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA-1) authentication	
	Replay attack prevention	
<b>Voice Support</b>	Stateful firewall packet filters	License required
	Compressed Real-Time Transport Protocol (CRTP)	
<b>High Availability</b>	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)	
	Graceful restart according to IETF standards	
	Redundant interfaces	

**Table 6: Summary of J-series Features and License Requirements (continued)**

<b>Feature Category</b>	<b>J-series Feature</b>	<b>Separate License</b>
<b>System Management</b>	JUNOScope network manager	
	J-Web browser interface—for Services Router configuration and management	
	JUNOScript XML application programming interface (API)	
	JUNOS command-line interface (CLI)—for Services Router configuration and management through the console, telnet, or SSH	
	Simple Network Management Protocol version 1 (SNMPv1) and SNMPv2	
<b>Traffic Analysis</b>	J-Flow flow monitoring and accounting	License required for J-Flow
	Packet capture (PCAP)	
	Real-time performance monitoring (RPM)	
<b>Activity Logging and Monitoring</b>	System log	
	Traceroute	
<b>Administration</b>	Supports the following external administrator databases:	
	■ RADIUS	
	■ Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)	
	■ SecurID	
	Autoinstallation	
	Configuration rollback	
	Button-operated configuration rescue (CONFIG)	
	Confirmation of configuration changes	
	Software upgrades	

## Chapter 2

# System Overview

J-series Services Routers are available in three models.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J2300 Services Router Hardware Features on page 9
- J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features on page 20
- Software Overview on page 32

### **J2300 Services Router Hardware Features**

---

This section contains the following topics:

- J2300 Chassis on page 9
- J2300 Routing Engine on page 12
- J2300 Front Panel on page 13
- J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM) on page 18
- J2300 LAN Ports on page 18
- J2300 Power System on page 18
- J2300 Cooling System on page 19

### ***J2300 Chassis***

The J2300 Services Router chassis is a rigid sheet metal structure that houses all the other router components (see Figure 1, Figure 2, and Figure 4). The chassis can be installed in many types of racks or cabinets, on a wall, or on a desk. For information about acceptable rack types, see “Rack Requirements” on page 82.

In addition to the features described in subsequent sections, the chassis includes the following features (see Figure 1 through Figure 3):

- One pair of metal brackets that can be attached to the side of the chassis. You can use the brackets for mounting the chassis in a rack or cabinet or on a wall.
- One electrostatic discharge (ESD) point, a PEM nut at the rear of the chassis.

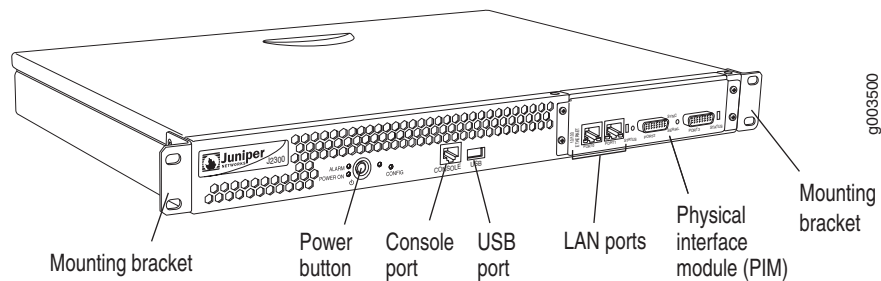


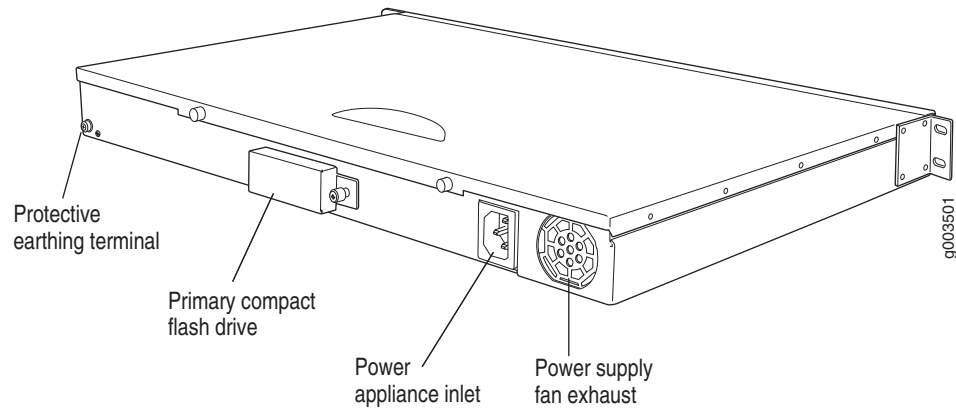
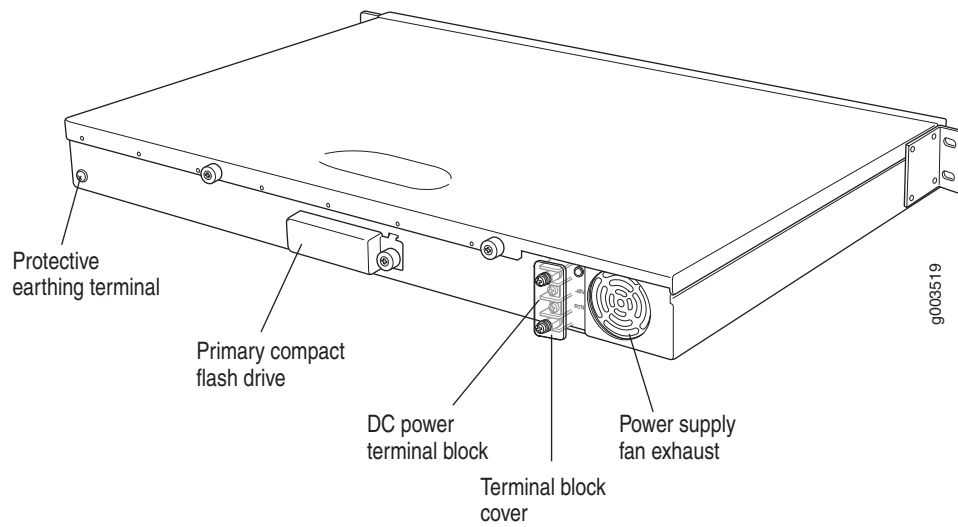
**CAUTION:** Before removing or installing components of a functioning router, attach an ESD strap to an ESD point and place the other end of the strap around your bare wrist. Failure to use an ESD strap could result in damage to the router.

The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground (see Figure 2). Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.

For additional safety information, see “Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information” on page 205.

**Figure 1: Front of J2300 Chassis**



**Figure 2: Rear of J2300 AC-Powered Chassis****Figure 3: Rear of J2300 DC-Powered Chassis**

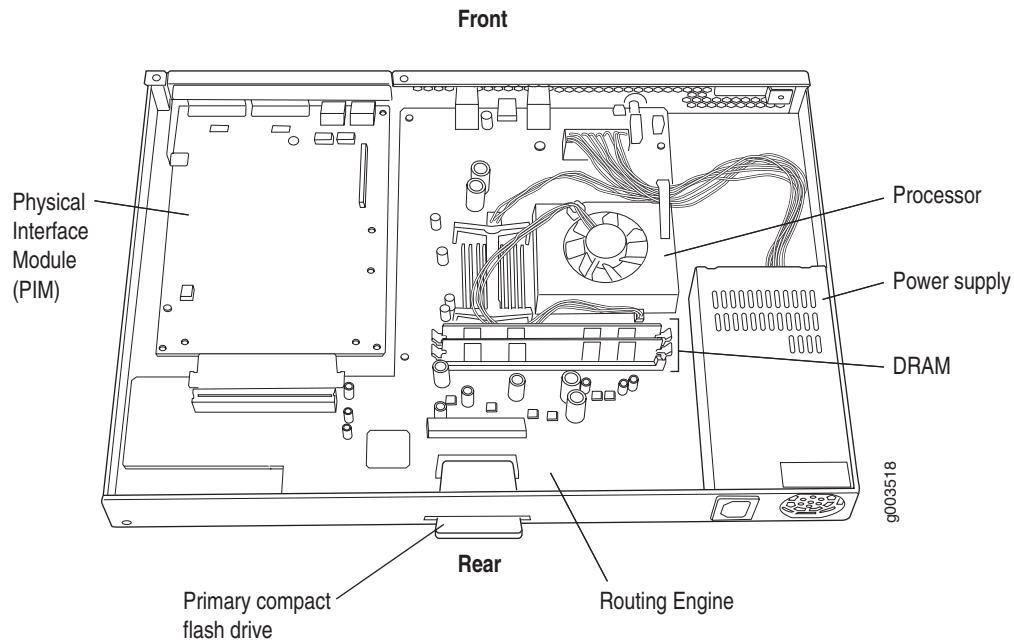
**Figure 4: J2300 Hardware Components**

Table 7 summarizes the physical specifications for the router chassis.

**Table 7: J2300 Physical Specifications**

Description	Value
Chassis dimensions	■ 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) high
	■ 17.25 in. (43.8 cm) wide—19 in. (48.3 cm) wide with mounting brackets attached
	■ 12.37 in. (31.4 cm) deep—plus 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) of hardware that protrudes from the chassis front
Router weight	12 lb (5.4 kg)

## J2300 Routing Engine

The Routing Engine provides three main functions:

- Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the Services Router, providing route lookup, filtering, and switching on incoming data packets, then directing outbound packets to the appropriate interface for transmission to the network.



- Maintains the routing tables used by the router and controls the routing protocols that run on the router.
- Provides control and monitoring functions for the router, including controlling power and monitoring system status.

The Routing Engine consists of the following components:

- Processor—Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the router and runs JUNOS Internet software to maintain the router's routing tables and routing protocols. The Routing Engine has a Pentium-class processor.
- DRAM—Buffers incoming packets and provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes.
- Compact flash drive—Provides primary storage for software images, configuration files, and microcode. The compact flash drive is accessible from the rear of the router, and is field-replaceable. For information about replacing the compact flash drive, see “Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk” on page 155.
- PCI bus—Provides the interface to the PIMs.
- EPROM—Stores the serial number of the Routing Engine.



**NOTE:** For specific information about Routing Engine components (for example, the amount of DRAM installed), issue the `show chassis routing-engine` command.

---

## J2300 Boot Devices

The J2300 Services Router can boot from two devices:

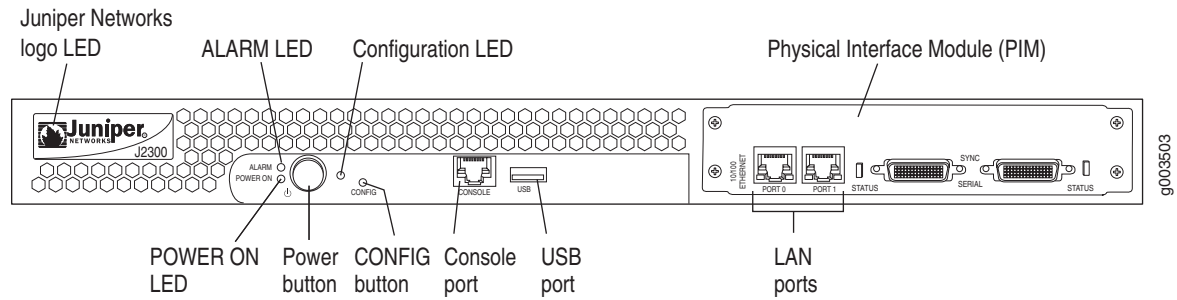
- Primary compact flash disk
- USB storage device

## J2300 Boot Sequence

Normally, the Services Router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If the compact flash disk fails, the router attempts to boot from the removable USB storage device, if present, which is the alternate boot device.

## J2300 Front Panel

The front panel of the Services Router (Figure 5) allows you to view router status LEDs, access the console port, and perform simple control functions.

**Figure 5: Front Panel of J2300 Services Router**

For information about the components of the front panel, see the following sections:

- Juniper Networks Logo LED on page 14
- ALARM LED on page 15
- Power Button and POWER ON LED on page 15
- CONFIG Button and LED on page 16
- Console Port on page 17
- J2300 USB Port on page 17

### Juniper Networks Logo LED

The Juniper Networks logo LED is located on the top-left corner on the front panel (see Figure 5). Table 8 describes the blue Juniper Networks logo LED.

**Table 8: Juniper Networks Logo LED**

Color	State	Description
Blue	Off	Router is unplugged, powered off, or malfunctioning.
	On steadily	Router is functioning normally.
	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Router is booting and not yet forwarding traffic.</li> <li>Or</li> <li>■ Router is operating but unable to forward traffic because of a problem.</li> </ul> <p>For a list of alarms that can occur on the router, see “Chassis Alarm Conditions” on page 175.</p>

## ALARM LED

The ALARM LED is located to the left of the power button on the front panel (see Figure 5). The yellow (amber) LED lights to indicate a critical condition that can result in a system shutdown or a less severe condition that requires monitoring or maintenance. When the condition is corrected, the light turns off.



**NOTE:** The ALARM LED on the Services Router lights yellow whether the alarm condition is major (red) or minor (yellow).

To deactivate alarms, you must clear the condition that caused the alarm. For a list of alarms that can occur on the router, see “Chassis Alarm Conditions” on page 175.

## Power Button and POWER ON LED

The power button is located on the left side of the front panel (see Figure 5). You can use the power button to power the Services Router on and off. When you power on the router, the Routing Engine boots as the power supply completes its startup sequence.

The POWER ON LED is located to the left of the power button on the front panel. Table 9 describes the POWER ON LED.

**Table 9: POWER ON LED**

Color	State	Description
Green	Off	Router is unplugged, or is powered off and in standby mode.
	On steadily	Router is powered on and is either booting or functioning normally.
	Blinking	Power button has been pressed and quickly released, and the router is gracefully shutting down.

After the router is powered on, status indicators—such as LEDs on the front panel and `show chassis` command output—can take up to 60 seconds to indicate that the power supply is functioning normally. Ignore error indicators that appear during the first 60 seconds.

If you need to power off the router after the Routing Engine finishes booting, use the J-Web interface or the CLI to halt the Services Router first. For instructions, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To power off a Services Router, do one of the following:

- Graceful shutdown—Press and release the power button. The router begins gracefully shutting down the operating system and then powers itself off.
- Immediate shutdown—Press the power button and hold it for more than 5 seconds. The router immediately powers itself off without shutting down the operating system.

## CONFIG Button and LED

Use the CONFIG button to return the router to a configuration that you have determined is a stable, known configuration. The CONFIG button is recessed to prevent it from being pressed accidentally.

The CONFIG button performs two recovery operations:

- Rescue—Press and release the CONFIG button to load and commit the rescue configuration, if you have set it. To set the rescue configuration, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.
- Clear—Press and hold the CONFIG button for 15 seconds or more, until the configuration LED blinks red to indicate the clear operation is in progress. The clear operation deletes *all* configurations on the router (including the rescue configuration and backup configurations) and loads and commits the factory configuration.

You can change the default behavior of the CONFIG button. For more information, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

Table 10 describes the configuration LED.

**Table 10: Configuration LED**

Color	State	Description
Green	Blinking	Rescue configuration is being loaded.
	On steadily	Rescue or factory configuration is loaded and committed.
Red	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Current committed configuration and all previous versions are being deleted.</li> <li>■ Factory configuration is being loaded.</li> </ul>
	On steadily	Operation to return the router to the rescue or factory configuration failed.

## Console Port

You can use the console port to connect to the Routing Engine through an RJ-45 serial cable. From the console port, you can use the CLI to configure the router. The console port is configured as data terminal equipment (DTE) and supports the RS-232 (EIA-232) standard.

For pinout information, see “Console Port Pinouts” on page 198.

## J2300 USB Port

The slot labeled USB on the front panel of the router (see Figure 5) accepts a USB storage device or USB storage device adapter with a compact flash disk installed, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the USB storage device is installed and configured, it automatically acts as a secondary boot device, if the primary compact flash disk fails on startup. Depending on the size of the USB storage device, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

## J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM)

The fixed Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) in J2300 Services Routers provide the physical connection to various network media types. For more information, see “J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs” on page 39.

For pinouts of PIM cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189. For PIM replacement instructions, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

## J2300 LAN Ports

All J-series Services Routers include two fixed 10/100Base-TX Fast Ethernet ports. The LAN ports receive incoming packets from the network and transmit outgoing packets to the network. Each port is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine.

The LAN ports are located on the front panel of the router (see Figure 5) and are configured like the ports on a Physical Interface Module (PIM). The LAN ports are not field-replaceable. The ports, labeled **PORT 0** and **PORT 1**, correspond to **fe-0/0/0** and **fe-0/0/1** respectively, for configuration.

For pinouts of Fast Ethernet cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

Each port has two LEDs located on each side of the bottom of the port. Table 11 describes the LAN port LEDs.

**Table 11: LEDs for Fast Ethernet LAN Ports**

Function	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is operational.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
		On steadily	Online without traffic.

## J2300 Power System

The J2300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. The autosensing power supply (see Figure 2 or Figure 3) distributes the different output voltages to the router components according to their voltage requirements.

The power supply is fixed in the chassis and is not field-replaceable. An AC power supply has a single AC appliance inlet that requires a dedicated AC power feed. The

DC power supply has a terminal block that provides a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) requiring a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 85. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

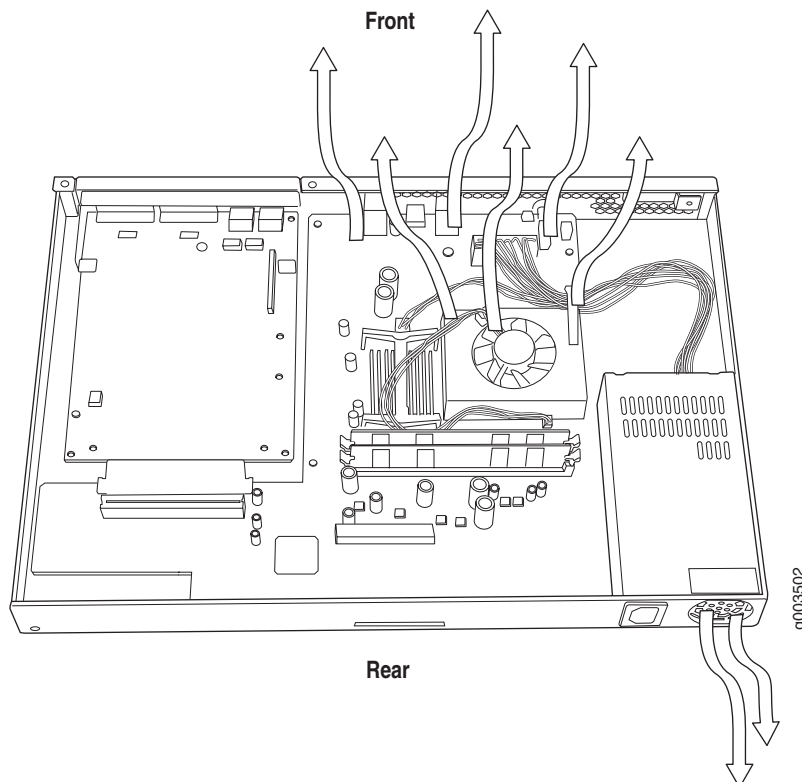
## ***J2300 Cooling System***

The cooling system consists of the following components:

- A fan on the Routing Engine’s processor
- A fan on the power supply

The airflow produced by these fans keeps router components within the acceptable temperature range (see Figure 6).

**Figure 6: Airflow Through the J2300 Chassis**



The Routing Engine monitors the temperature of the router components. If the ambient maximum temperature specification is exceeded and the router cannot be adequately cooled, the Routing Engine shuts down the hardware components.

## J4300 and J6300 Services Router Hardware Features

---

This section contains the following topics:

- J4300 and J6300 Chassis on page 20
- Midplane on page 25
- J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine on page 25
- J4300 and J6300 Front Panel on page 26
- J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) on page 29
- J4300 Power System on page 30
- J6300 Power System on page 30
- J4300 and J6300 Cooling System on page 31

### J4300 and J6300 Chassis

The J4300 and J6300 Services Router chassis is a rigid sheet metal structure that houses all the other router components (see Figure 7 through Figure 12). The chassis can be installed in many types of racks or cabinets. For information about acceptable rack types, see “Rack Requirements” on page 82.

In addition to the features described in subsequent sections, the chassis includes the following features:

- One pair of metal brackets attached to the side of the chassis. You can use the brackets for mounting the chassis in a rack or cabinet.
- One electrostatic discharge (ESD) point, a banana plug receptacle at the front of the chassis.



**CAUTION:** Before removing or installing components of a functioning router, attach an ESD strap to an ESD point and place the other end of the strap around your bare wrist. Failure to use an ESD strap could result in damage to the router.

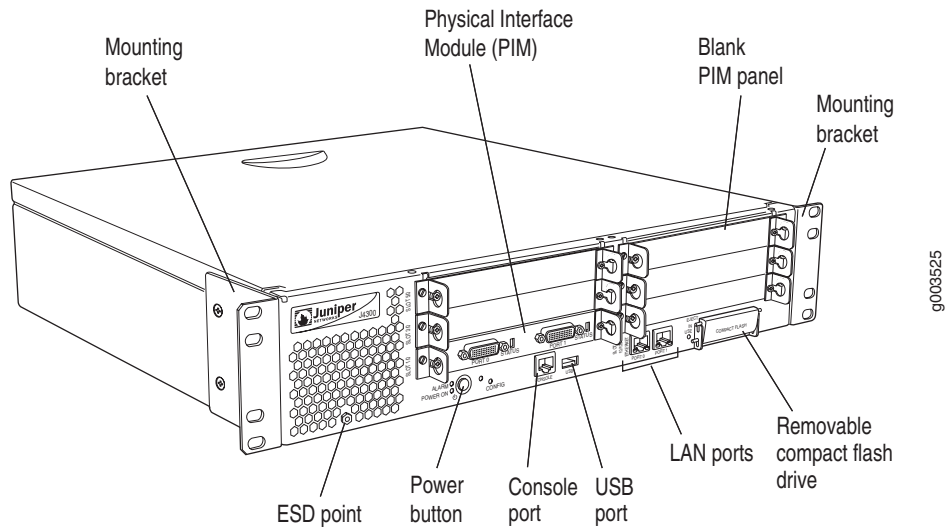
The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground (see Figure 2). Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.



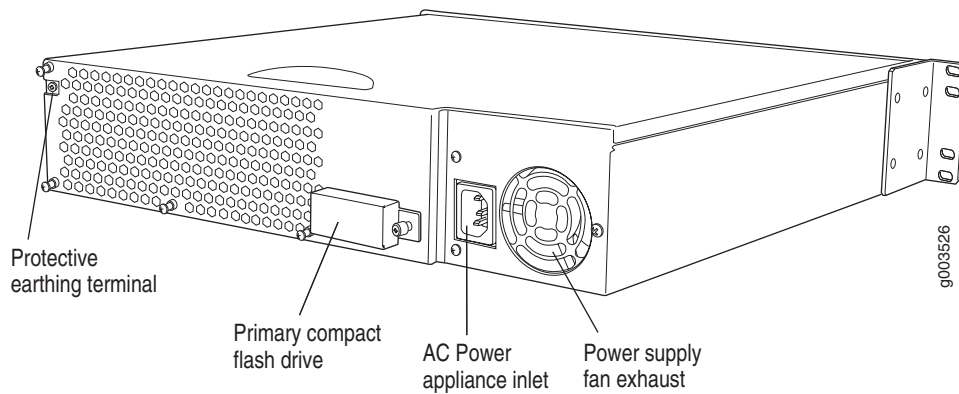
For additional safety information, see “Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information” on page 205.

- One protective earthing terminal, a PEM nut at the rear of the chassis.

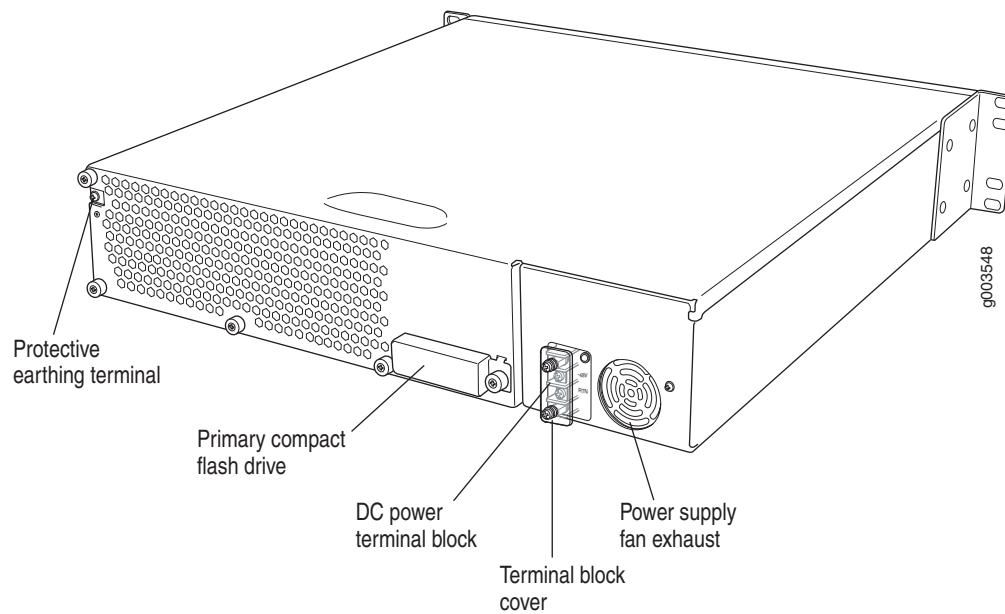
**Figure 7: Front of J4300 and J6300 Chassis**



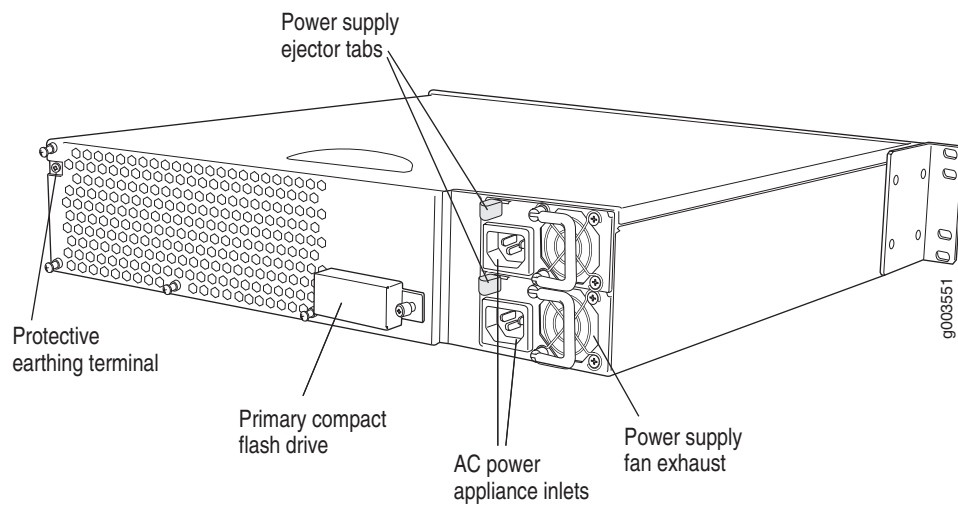
**Figure 8: Rear of AC-Powered J4300 Chassis**

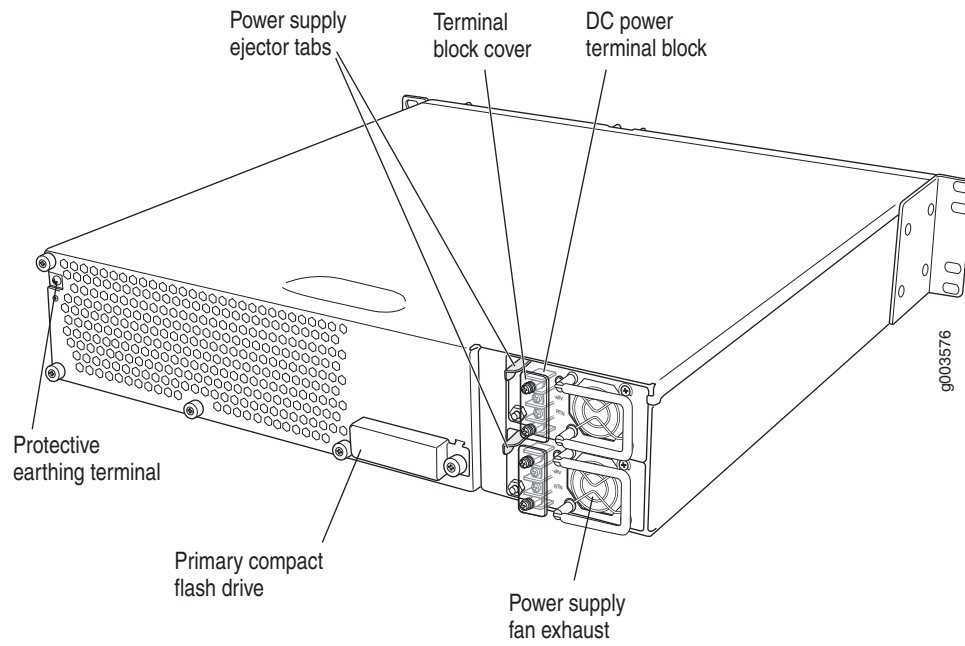


**Figure 9: Rear of DC-Powered J4300 Chassis**



**Figure 10: Rear of AC-Powered J6300 Chassis**



**Figure 11: Rear of DC-Powered J6300 Chassis**

**Figure 12: J4300 and J6300 Hardware Components**

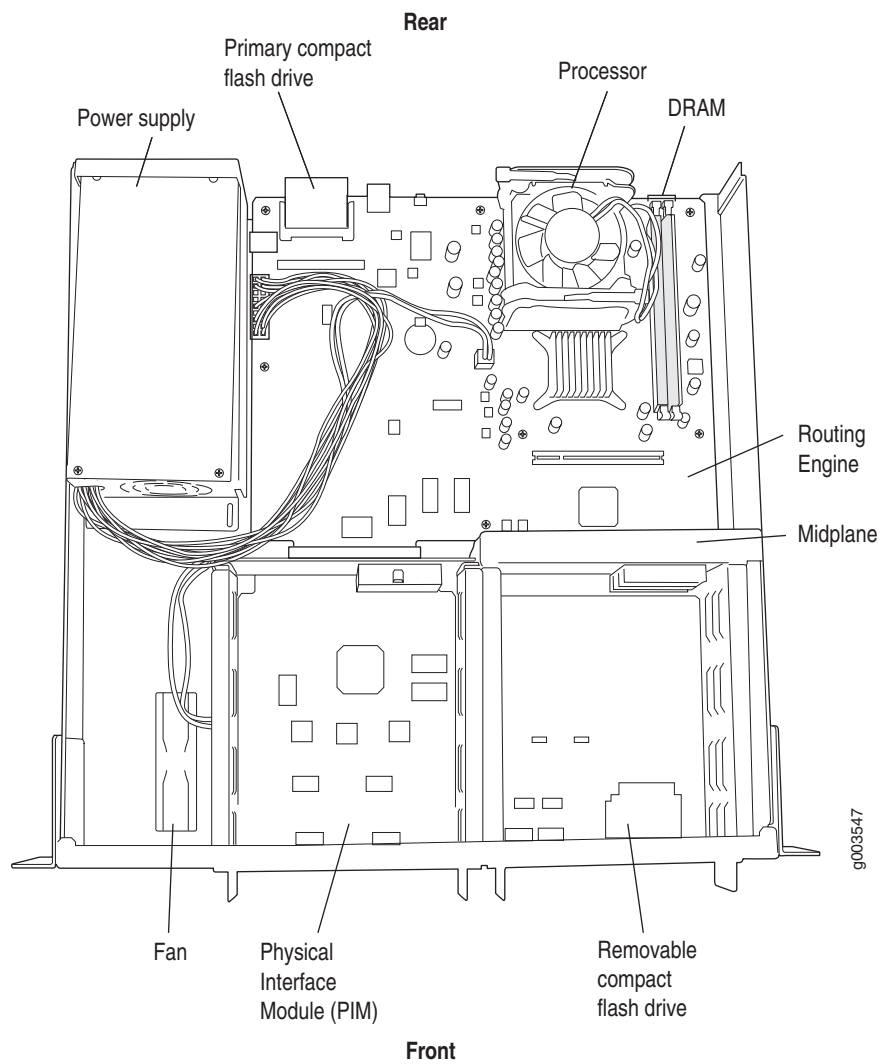


Table 12 summarizes the physical specifications for the router chassis.

**Table 12: J4300 and J6300 Physical Specifications**

Description	Value
Chassis dimensions	■ 3.50 in. (8.9 cm) high
	■ 17.00 in. (43.2 cm) wide—19 in. (48.3 cm) wide with mounting brackets attached
	■ 19.00 in. (48.3 cm) deep—plus 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) of hardware that protrudes from the chassis front
Router weight	■ J4300 router minimum configuration (no PIMs): 18 lb (8.2 kg)
	■ J4300 router maximum configuration (six PIMs): 21 lb (9.5 kg)
	■ J6300 router minimum configuration (no PIMs and one power supply): 18.5 lb (8.4 kg)
	■ J6300 router maximum configuration (six PIMs and two power supplies): 24 lb (10.9 kg)

## Midplane

The midplane is located in the center of the chassis and forms the rear of the PIM card cage (see Figure 12). You install the PIMs into the midplane from the front of the chassis. Data packets are transferred across the midplane from the PIM to the Routing Engine, and from the Routing Engine across the midplane to the destination PIM.

## J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine

The Routing Engine provides three main functions:

- Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the Services Router, providing route lookup, filtering, and switching on incoming data packets, then directing outbound packets to the appropriate interface for transmission to the network.
- Maintains the routing tables used by the router and controls the routing protocols that run on the router.
- Provides control and monitoring functions for the router, including controlling power and monitoring system status.

The Routing Engine consists of the following components:

- Processor—Creates the packet forwarding switch fabric for the router and runs JUNOS Internet software to maintain the router's routing tables and routing protocols. The Routing Engine has a Pentium-class processor.
- DRAM—Buffers incoming packets and provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes.
- Compact flash drive—Provides primary storage for software images, configuration files, and microcode. The compact flash drive is accessible from the rear of the router, and is field-replaceable. For information about

replacing the compact flash drive, see “Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk” on page 155.

- PCI bus—Provides the interface to the PIMs.
- EPROM—Stores the serial number of the Routing Engine.



**NOTE:** For specific information about Routing Engine components (for example, the amount of DRAM installed), issue the `show chassis routing-engine` command.

---

## J4300 and J6300 Boot Devices

The J4300 and J6300 Services Routers can boot from three devices:

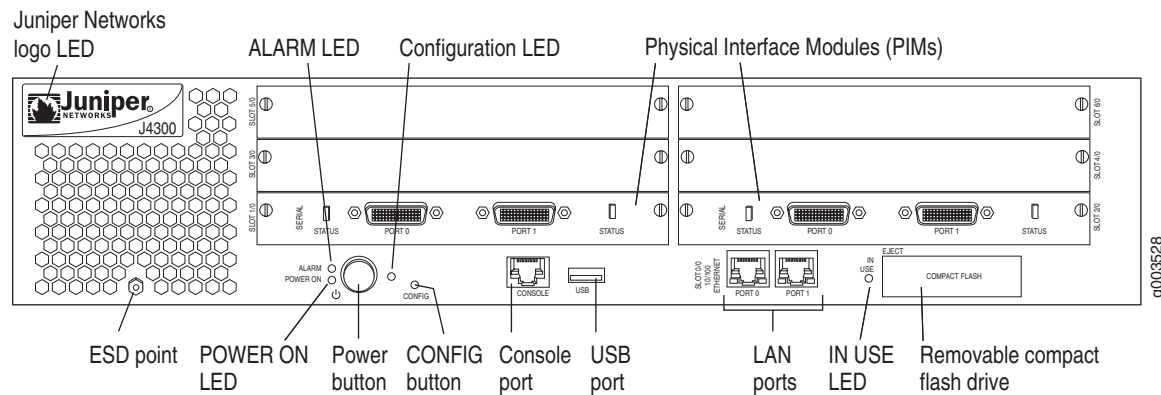
- Primary compact flash disk
- Removable compact flash disk
- USB storage device

## J4300 and J6300 Boot Sequence

Normally, the Services Router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If the compact flash disk fails, the router attempts to boot from the removable compact flash disk, which is the alternate boot device. If the removable compact flash disk is not present or fails, the router attempts to boot from the USB storage device.

## J4300 and J6300 Front Panel

The front panel of a J4300 or J6300 Services Router (Figure 13) allows you to view router status LEDs, access the console port, connect to LAN ports, and perform simple control functions.

**Figure 13: Front Panel of J4300 and J6300**

The components of the front panel, from left to right, are described in the following sections:

- Juniper Networks Logo LED on page 27
- ALARM LED on page 27
- Power Button and POWER ON LED on page 28
- CONFIG Button and Configuration LED on page 28
- Console Port on page 28
- J4300 and J6300 USB Port on page 28
- J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports on page 28
- J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive on page 29

## Juniper Networks Logo LED

The Juniper Networks logo LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers functions identically to the Juniper Networks logo LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “Juniper Networks Logo LED” on page 14.

## ALARM LED

The ALARM LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers functions identically to the ALARM LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “ALARM LED” on page 15.

## Power Button and POWER ON LED

The power button and POWER ON LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers function identically to the power button and POWER ON LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “Power Button and POWER ON LED” on page 15.

## CONFIG Button and Configuration LED

The CONFIG button and LED on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers function identically to the CONFIG button and configuration LED on the J2300 Services Router. See “CONFIG Button and LED” on page 16.

## Console Port

The console port on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers functions identically to the console port on the J2300 Services Router. See “Console Port” on page 17.

For pinout information, see “Console Port Pinouts” on page 198.

## J4300 and J6300 USB Port

The slot labeled USB on the front panel of the router (see Figure 13) accepts a USB storage device or USB storage device adapter with a compact flash disk installed, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the USB storage device is installed and configured, it automatically acts as a secondary boot device, if the primary or removable compact flash disk fails on startup. Depending on the size of the USB storage device, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

## J4300 and J6300 LAN Ports

All J-series Services Routers include two fixed 10/100Base-TX Fast Ethernet ports. The LAN ports receive incoming packets from the network and transmit outgoing packets to the network. Each port is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine.

The LAN ports are located on the front panel of the router (see Figure 13) and are configured like the ports on a Physical Interface Module (PIM). The LAN ports are not field-replaceable. The ports, labeled PORT 0 and PORT 1, correspond to fe-0/0/0 and fe-0/0/1 respectively, for configuration.



For pinouts of Fast Ethernet cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

Each port has two LEDs located on each side of the bottom of the port. Table 11 describes the LAN port LEDs.

## J4300 and J6300 Removable Compact Flash Drive

The slot labeled COMPACT FLASH on the front panel of the Services Router (see Figure 13) is a removable compact flash drive that accepts a type I or II compact flash disk, as defined in the *CompactFlash Specification* published by the CompactFlash Association. When the removable compact flash disk is installed and configured, it automatically acts as the secondary boot device if the primary compact flash drive fails on startup.

Depending on the capacity of the removable compact flash disk, you can also configure it to receive any core files generated during a failure. For information about configuring a removable compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

The IN USE LED indicates that the removable compact flash is being accessed. Table 13 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 13: IN USE LED**

Color	State	Description
Red	On steadily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Router has booted from the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>request system snapshot operation has been executed, and files are being copied to or from the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>Core dump of the kernel is being written to the removable compact flash drive.</li> <li>savecore process is retrieving core dump information.</li> </ul>

## J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs)

Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) provide the physical connection to various network media types. For more information, see “J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIMs” on page 49.

For pinouts of PIM cable connectors, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189. For PIM replacement instructions, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

## J4300 Power System

The J4300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. The autosensing power supply (see Figure 8 or Figure 9) distributes the different output voltages to the router components according to their voltage requirements.

The power supply is fixed in the chassis, and is not field-replaceable. An AC power supply has a single AC appliance inlet that requires a dedicated AC power feed. The DC power supply has a terminal block that provides a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) that requires a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 85. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

## J6300 Power System

The J6300 Services Router uses either AC or DC power. You can install one or two autosensing, load-sharing power supplies at the bottom rear of the chassis, as shown in Figure 10 or Figure 11. The power supplies distribute the different output voltages to the router components, depending on their voltage requirements. When the power supplies are installed and operational, they automatically share the electrical load.

For full redundancy, two power supplies are required. If a power supply stops functioning for any reason, the second power supply instantly begins providing all the power the router needs for normal functioning. It can provide full power indefinitely.

Each power supply has an LED located on the power supply faceplate. Table 14 describes the J6300 power supply LED.

**Table 14: J6300 Power Supply LED**

State	Description
Off	No power flowing to the power supply.
Green	Power supply is working correctly.
Red	Power supply is starting up, or has failed.

For information about site power preparations, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 85. For information about connecting the router to power and ground, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

Power supplies are hot-removable and hot-insertable. You can remove and replace a redundant power supply without powering down the router or disrupting the routing functions. To avoid electrical injury, carefully follow the instructions in “Replacing Power System Components in a J6300 Router” on page 167.



**WARNING:** DC-powered J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

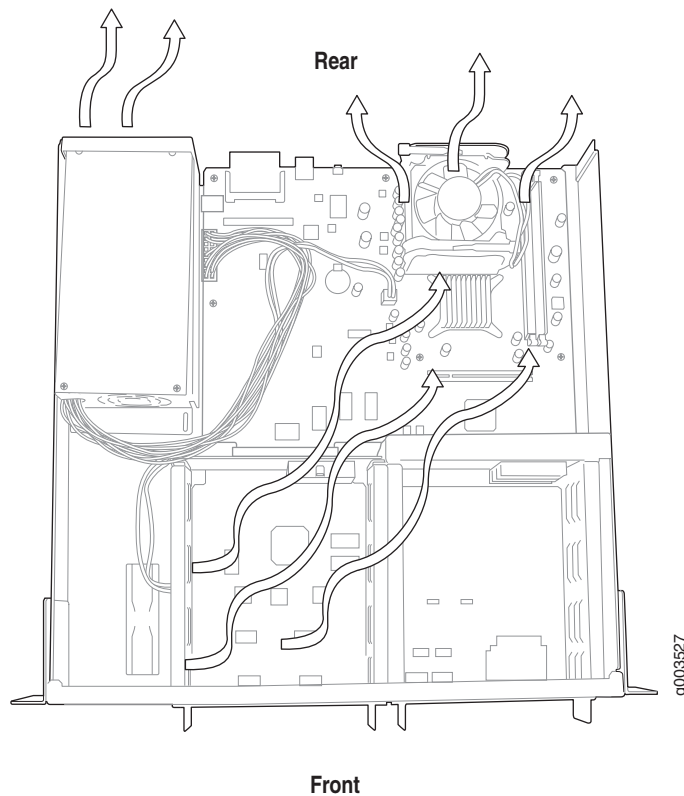
## J4300 and J6300 Cooling System

The cooling system consists of the following components:

- A fan on the midplane
- A fan on the Routing Engine's processor
- An internal fan on the power supply

The airflow produced by these fans keeps router components within the acceptable temperature range (see Figure 14).

**Figure 14: Airflow Through the J4300 and J6300 Chassis**



The Routing Engine monitors the temperature of the router components. If the ambient maximum temperature specification is exceeded and the router cannot be adequately cooled, the Routing Engine shuts down the hardware components.

## Software Overview

---

Each J-series Services Router runs the JUNOS Internet software on its general-purpose processors. Designed for the large production networks typically supported by Internet service providers (ISPs), the JUNOS software includes processes for Internet Protocol (IP) routing and for managing interfaces, networks, and the router chassis.

The JUNOS Internet software runs on the Routing Engine. The Routing Engine kernel coordinates communication among the JUNOS software processes and provides a link to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

With the J-Web interface and the command-line interface (CLI) to the JUNOS software, you configure the routing protocols that run on the Services Router and set the properties of its network interfaces. After activating a software configuration, use either user interface to monitor the protocol traffic passing through the router, manage operations, and diagnose protocol and network connectivity problems.

This section contains the following topics:

- Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine on page 32
- Kernel and Microkernel on page 33
- Processes on page 33
- User Interfaces on page 34

### ***Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine***

A Services Router has two primary software processing components:

- Routing Engine—Creates and maintains the routing tables that determine how packets are routed through the network.
- Packet Forwarding Engine—Processes packets; applies filters, routing policies, and other features; and forwards packets to the next hop along the route to their final destination.

For information about Routing Engine hardware, see “J2300 Routing Engine” on page 12 and “J4300 and J6300 Routing Engine” on page 25.

## **Kernel and Microkernel**

The Routing Engine kernel provides the underlying infrastructure for all JUNOS software processes by doing the following:

- Linking the routing tables maintained by the routing protocol process with the forwarding table maintained by the Routing Engine.
- Coordinating communication with the Packet Forwarding Engine, primarily by synchronizing the Packet Forwarding Engine's forwarding table with the master forwarding table maintained by the Routing Engine.

The microkernel contains device drivers and processes that the Packet Forwarding Engine uses to govern the flow of packets through the Services Router.

## **Processes**

The JUNOS software running on the Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine consists of multiple processes that are responsible for individual Services Router functions.

The separation of functions provides operational stability, because each process accesses its own protected memory space. In addition, because each process is a separate software package, you can selectively upgrade all or part of the JUNOS software, for added flexibility.

The following processes are primary:

- Management Process on page 33
- Chassis Process on page 34
- Routing Protocol Process on page 34
- Interface Process on page 34
- Forwarding Process on page 34

### **Management Process**

The JUNOS management process (mgd) manages the Services Router system as follows:

- Provides communication between the other processes and an interface to the configuration database

- Populates the configuration database with configuration information and retrieves the information when queried by other processes to ensure that the system operates as configured
- Interacts with the other processes when commands are issued through one of the user interfaces on the router

## Chassis Process

The JUNOS chassis process (chassisd) controls a Services Router chassis and its components as follows:

- Detects hardware on the system that is used to configure network interfaces with the J-Web user interface
- Monitors the physical status of hardware components and field-replaceable units (FRUs), detecting when environment sensors such as temperature sensors are triggered
- Relays signals and interrupts—for example, when devices are taken offline, so that the system can close sessions and shut down gracefully

## Routing Protocol Process

The Services Router forwards packets through a network by means of the routing protocols it uses and the routing and forwarding tables it maintains. By selecting routes and maintaining forwarding tables, the JUNOS routing protocol process (rpd) defines how routing protocols such as RIP, OSPF, and BGP operate on the router.

## Interface Process

The JUNOS interface process (ifd) supplies the programs that configure and monitor network interfaces by defining physical characteristics such as link encapsulation, hold times, and keepalive timers.

## Forwarding Process

The JUNOS forwarding process (fwdd) is responsible for most of the packet transmission through a Services Router. The overall performance of the router is largely determined by the effectiveness of the forwarding process.

## User Interfaces

The user interfaces on a Services Router interact with the management process to execute commands and store and retrieve information from the configuration database. The user interfaces operate as clients that communicate with the JUNOS Internet software through an application programming interface (API).

The following primary user interfaces are shipped with the router:

- J-Web graphical user interface—Includes quick configuration capabilities for performing the minimum required steps to enable a feature, plus a built-in configuration editor with access to the entire configuration hierarchy to fully configure the router. The J-Web interface also provides tools for monitoring, managing, and diagnosing router operation.
- Command-line interface (CLI)—Grants access to the complete JUNOS command and configuration hierarchies, to monitor and diagnose the router and configure it completely.

For more information, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61.

Other user interfaces for the Services Router interact with the management process through the common API interface. These interfaces are designed to facilitate the configuration of one or, in some cases, many routers on the network. Among the supported interfaces are the JUNOScope and Service Deployment System (SDX) applications. For more information about these products, see the *JUNOScope Software User Guide* and the *SDX Software Basics Guide*.





## Chapter 3

# Physical Interface Modules Overview

A Physical Interface Module (PIM) is a network interface card that is fixed or interchangeably installed on a J-series Services Router, to provide physical connections to a LAN or a WAN. The PIM receives incoming packets from the network and transmits outgoing packets to the network. Each PIM is equipped with a dedicated network processor that forwards incoming data packets to the Routing Engine, and receives outgoing data packets from the Routing Engine. During this process, the PIM performs framing and line-speed signaling for its medium type.

The PIMs on J-series Services Routers include network interfaces for E1, E3, T1, T3, Fast Ethernet, serial, ADSL, G.SHDSL, and ISDN media and a license for one physical interface port.



**NOTE:** You must purchase an additional license if you need a second physical port. For license details, see “Installing and Managing J-series Licenses” on page 135.

For information about network interfaces, see the interfaces overview and configuration information in the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics.

- PIM Terms on page 37
- J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs on page 39
- J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIMs on page 49

## PIM Terms

To understand the PIMs, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 15.

**Table 15: PIM Terms**

Term	Definition
ADSL Annex A	ITU-T Standard G.992.1 that defines how ADSL works over plain old telephone service (POTS) lines.

**Table 15: PIM Terms (continued)**

<b>Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<b>ADSL Annex B</b>	ITU-T Standard G.992.1 that defines how ADSL works over Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) lines.
<b>bandwidth on demand</b>	ISDN cost-control feature defining the bandwidth threshold that must be reached on all links before a Services Router initiates additional ISDN data connections to provide more bandwidth.
<b>basic rate interface (BRI)</b>	ISDN interface intended for home and small enterprise applications. BRI consists of two 64-Kbps B-channels and one 16-Kbps D-channel.
<b>callback</b>	Alternative feature to dial-in that enables a J-series Services Router to call back the caller from the remote end of a backup ISDN connection. Instead of accepting a call from the remote end of the connection, the router rejects the call, waits a configured period of time, and calls a number configured on the router's dialer interface. See also <i>dial-in</i> .
<b>caller ID</b>	Telephone number of the caller on the remote end of a backup ISDN connection, used to dial in and also to identify the caller. Multiple caller IDs can be configured on an ISDN dialer interface. During dial-in, the router matches the incoming call's caller ID against the caller IDs configured on its dialer interfaces. Each dialer interface accepts calls from only callers whose caller IDs are configured on it.
<b>channel service unit (CSU)</b>	Unit that connects a digital telephone line to a multiplexer or other signal service.
<b>data service unit (DSU)</b>	Unit that connects a data terminal equipment (DTE) device—in this case, a Services Router—to a digital telephone line.
<b>data terminal equipment-to-data communication equipment (DTE-DCE) interface</b>	RS-232 interface that a Services Router (the DTE) uses to exchange information with a serial device such as a modem (the DCE).  A DTE cable uses a male 9-pin or 25-pin connector, and a DCE cable uses a female 9-pin or 25-pin connector.
<b>demand circuit</b>	Interface configured for dial-on-demand routing backup. In OSPF, the demand circuit reduces the amount of OSPF traffic by removing all OSPF protocols when the routing domain is in a steady state.
<b>dial backup</b>	Feature that reestablishes network connectivity through one or more backup ISDN dialer interfaces after a primary interface fails. When the primary interface is reestablished, the ISDN interface is disconnected.
<b>dial-in</b>	Feature that enables J-series Services Routers to receive calls from the remote end of a backup ISDN connection. The remote end of the ISDN call might be a service provider, a corporate central location, or a customer premises equipment (CPE) branch office. All incoming calls can be verified against caller IDs configured on the router's dialer interface. See also <i>callback</i> .
<b>dialer filter</b>	Stateless firewall filter that enables dial-on-demand routing backup when applied to a physical ISDN interface and its dialer interface configured as a passive static route. The passive static route has a lower priority than dynamic routes. If all dynamic routes to an address are lost from the routing table and the router receives a packet for that address, the dialer interface initiates an ISDN backup connection and sends the packet over it. See also <i>dial-on-demand routing backup</i> ; <i>floating static route</i> .

**Table 15: PIM Terms (continued)**

Term	Definition
<b>dial-on-demand-routing (DDR) backup</b>	Feature that provides a J-series Services Router with full-time connectivity across an ISDN line. When routes on a primary serial T1, E1, T3, E3, Fast Ethernet, or PPPoE interface are lost, an ISDN dialer interface establishes a backup connection. To save connection time costs, the Services Router drops the ISDN connection after a configured period of inactivity. Services Router with ISDN interfaces support two types of dial-on-demand routing backup: on-demand routing with a dialer filter and dialer watch. See also <i>dialer filter</i> ; <i>dialer watch</i> .
<b>floating static route</b>	Route with an administrative distance greater than the administrative distance of the dynamically learned versions of the same route. The static route is used only when the dynamic routes are no longer available. When a floating static route is configured on an interface with a dialer filter, the interface can be used for backup.
<b>dialer watch</b>	Dial-on-demand routing (DDR) backup feature that provides reliable connectivity without relying on a dialer filter to activate the ISDN interface. The ISDN dialer interface monitors the existence of each route on a watch list. If all routes on the watch list are lost from the routing table, dialer watch initiates the ISDN interface for failover connectivity. See also <i>dial-on-demand routing backup</i> .
<b>“dying gasp” notification</b>	Ability of a Services Router with a digital subscriber line (DSL) connection that has lost power to send a message informing the attached DSL access multiplexer (DSLAM) that it is about to go offline.
<b>plain old telephone service (POTS)</b>	Standard telephone service that allows limited speed and bandwidth of 52 Kbps, which is also known as public switched telephone network (PSTN).
<b>ISDN S/T interface</b>	Interface between an ISDN network and a network termination device consisting of two twisted pairs, one each for transmitting and receiving. The S/T interface usually resides in the customer premises and operates at 192 Kbps, of which ISDN traffic accounts for 144 Kbps.
<b>ISDN U interface</b>	Single twisted-pair interface line connecting the customer premises unit in an ISDN network to the central office. A U interface runs at 144 Kbps (128 Kbps for two B channels and 16 Kbps for the D channel).

## J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs

The PIMs in J2300 Services Routers are fixed and not interchangeable. The J2300 chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and one set of WAN ports. The J2300 Services Routers provide the chassis types summarized in Table 16 and described in the following sections:

- J2300 Chassis PIM Summary on page 40
- Dual-Port Serial Chassis on page 41
- Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis on page 42
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis on page 43
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis on page 44

- Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis on page 46
- Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis on page 47

## J2300 Chassis PIM Summary

Table 16 provides software release information, port numbers, and sample interface names for J2300 Services Router chassis types.

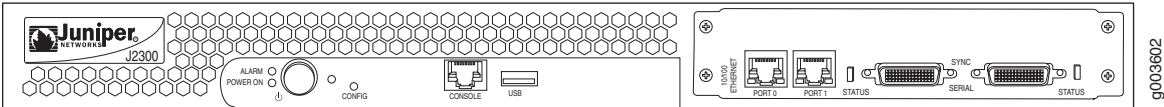
**Table 16: J2300 Chassis PIM Summary**

Chassis Type	Software Release	Port Numbering	Sample Interface Names (type-pim/0/port)
Dual-Port Serial	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for serial interfaces	se-0/0/2
Dual-Port Serial with one ISDN BRI port	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for serial interfaces	se-0/0/2
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI interface	br-0/0/4
Dual-Port T1 or E1	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for T1 or E1 interfaces	t1-0/0/2 e1-0/0/2
Dual-Port T1 or E1 with one ISDN BRI port	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for T1 or E1 interfaces	t1-0/0/2 e1-0/0/2
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI interface	br-0/0/4
Dual-Port G.SHDSL	JUNOS 7.5 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for G.SHDSL interfaces	at-0/0/2
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with one ISDN BRI S/T port	JUNOS 7.5 and later	Ports—0 and 1 for Fast Ethernet interfaces	fe-0/0/0
		Ports—2 and 3 for G.SHDSL interfaces	at-0/0/2 br-0/0/4
		Port—4 for the ISDN BRI S/T interface	

Dual-Port Serial Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port Serial chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two serial WAN ports as shown in Figure 15.

Figure 15: J2300 Serial Chassis



The Dual-Port Serial chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 18 describes the meaning of the status LED for a serial port.

Table 17: LEDs for Fast Ethernet LAN Ports

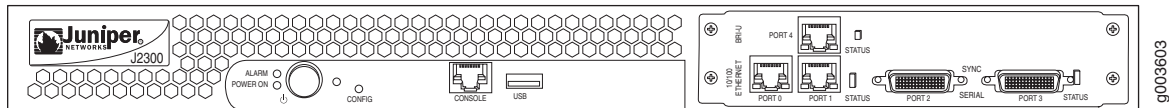
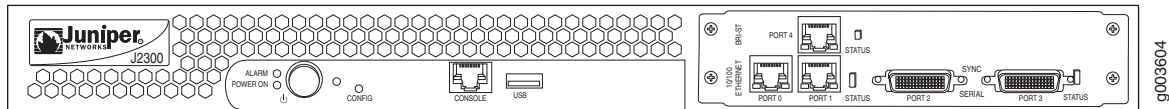
Label	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is operational.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
		On steadily	Online without traffic.

**Table 18: Status LED for Serial Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

### Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two serial WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI U (Figure 16) or S/T (Figure 17) port. The ISDN BRI interface is the backup interface to the primary serial interface and provides failover support for a serial connection.

**Figure 16: J2300 Serial with ISDN BRI U Chassis****Figure 17: J2300 Serial with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**

The serial with ISDN BRI S/T or U interface chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 19 describes the meaning of the status LED for a serial port, and Table 20 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

Table 19: Status LED for Serial Ports

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

Table 20: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

Dual-Port T1 or E1 Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port T1 or E1 chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two T1 or E1 WAN ports. Figure 18 shows the E1 chassis, and Figure 19 shows the T1 chassis.

Figure 18: J2300 E1 Chassis

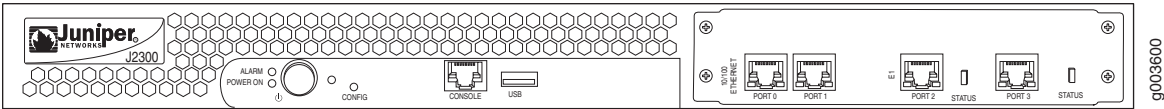
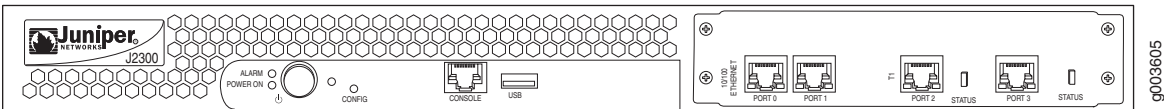


Figure 19: J2300 T1 Chassis



The T1 or E1 chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Framed, unframed (E1 only), and fractional operational modes
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Local and remote loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 21 describes the meaning of the status LED for a T1 or E1 port.

**Table 21: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

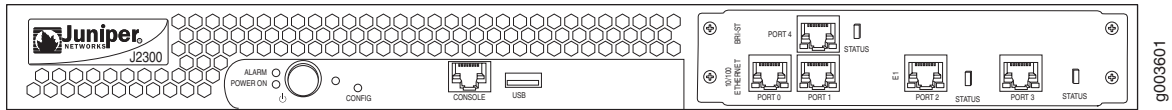
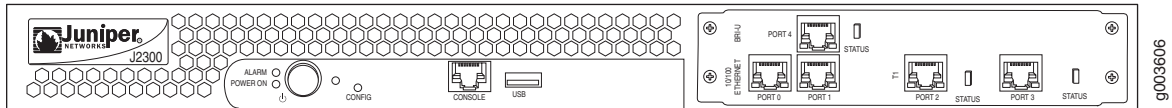
Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

### **Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI Chassis**

The J2300 Dual-Port T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two T1 or E1 WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI port. The ISDN BRI interface is the backup interface to the primary T1 or E1 interface and provides ISDN failover support for a T1 or E1 connection.

The E1 chassis has an ISDN BRI S/T port (Figure 20), and the T1 chassis has an ISDN BRI U port (Figure 21).



**Figure 20: J2300 E1 with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis****Figure 21: J2300 T1 with ISDN BRI U Chassis**

The T1 or E1 with ISDN BRI chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Framed, unframed (E1 only), and fractional operational modes
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Local and remote loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 22 describes the meaning of the status LED for a T1 or E1 port, and Table 23 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

**Table 22: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

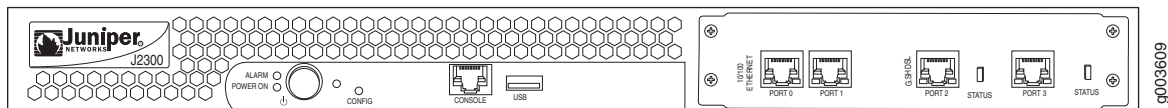
Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

**Table 23: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

## Dual-Port G.SHDSL Chassis

The J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports and two G.SHDSL WAN ports, as shown in Figure 22. The G.SHDSL ports provide symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) interfaces to ATM network media for ATM-over-SHDSL connections.

**Figure 22: J2300 G.SHDSL Chassis**

The G.SHDSL chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode



**NOTE:** Contact the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) before implementing 1-port four-wire mode.

- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.
  - 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- Up to 16 virtual channels (VCs) per G.SHDSL port
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

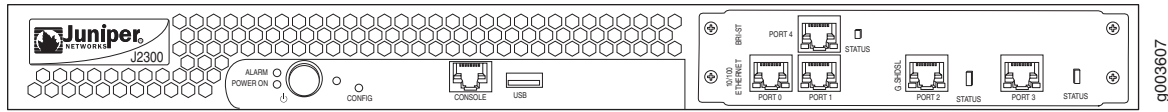
Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, and Table 24 describes the meaning of the status LED for a G.SHDSL port.

**Table 24: Status LED for G.SHDSL Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

### **Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**

The J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI chassis has two Fast Ethernet LAN ports, two G.SHDSL WAN ports, and one ISDN BRI S/T port as shown in Figure 23. The G.SHDSL ports provide symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) interfaces to ATM network media for ATM-over-SHDSL connections. The ISDN BRI S/T interface is the backup interface to the primary G.SHDSL interface and provides ISDN failover support for a G.SHDSL connection.

**Figure 23: J2300 G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T Chassis**

The G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode



**NOTE:** Contact the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) before implementing 1-port four-wire mode.

- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.
  - 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- Up to 16 virtual channels (VCs) per G.SHDSL port
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup

For pinouts of cable connectors for the network ports, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

For alarms, see configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

Table 17 describes the meaning of the LEDs for a Fast Ethernet port, Table 25 describes the meaning of the status LED for a G.SHDSL port, and Table 26 describes the meaning of the status LED for an ISDN BRI port.

**Table 25: Status LEDs for G.SHDSL Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.

**Table 26: Status LED for ISDN BRI Port**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

## J4300 and J6300 Field-Replaceable PIMs

The PIMs in J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are removable and insertable when the router is powered off. You can install a PIM into one of the six slots in the router chassis. If a slot is not occupied by a PIM, a PIM blank panel must be installed to shield the empty slot and to allow cooling air to circulate properly through the router.

The J4300 and J6300 Services Routers support the types of PIMs summarized in Table 27 and described in the following sections:

- Field-Replaceable PIM Summary on page 49
- Dual-Port Serial PIM on page 50
- Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM on page 51
- T3 or E3 PIM on page 53
- Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM on page 54
- 4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs on page 55
- ADSL PIM on page 57
- G.SHDSL PIM on page 59

### **Field-Replaceable PIM Summary**

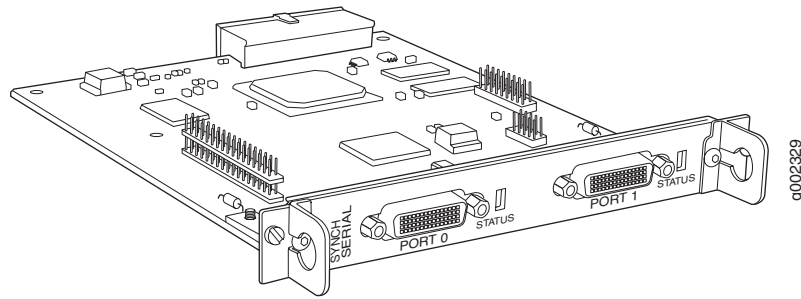
Table 27 provides software release information, slot and port numbers, and sample interface names for the field-replaceable PIMs supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers.

**Table 27: Field-Replaceable PIM Summary**

<b>PIM</b>	<b>Software Release</b>	<b>Slot and Port Numbering</b>	<b>Sample Interface Name (type-pim/0/port)</b>
Dual-Port Serial	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Ports—0 and 1	se-3/0/1
Dual-Port T1 or E1	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Ports—0 and 1	t1-0/0/1 or e1-0/0/1
T3 or E3 (J6300 only)	T3 PIM—JUNOS 7.0 and later E3 PIM—JUNOS 7.3 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Port—0	t3-0/0/0 or e3-2/0/0
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet	JUNOS 7.0 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Ports—0 and 1	fe-1/0/0
4-Port ISDN BRI	JUNOS 7.3 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Ports—0, 1, 2, and 3	br-1/0/2
ADSL	ADSL Annex A and Annex B—JUNOS 7.2 and later  ADSL 2/2 + Annex A—JUNOS 7.3 and later  ADSL 2/2 + Annex B—JUNOS 7.4 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Port—0	at-2/0/0
G.SHDSL	JUNOS 7.4 and later	Slots—1 through 6 Ports—0 and 1	at-1/0/0

### **Dual-Port Serial PIM**

The Dual-Port Serial PIM (Figure 24) is supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers and provides a physical connection to serial network media types through two serial interface ports.

**Figure 24: Dual-Port Serial PIM**

The Dual-Port Serial PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Autoselection of operation modes based on data terminal equipment (DTE) or data communication equipment (DCE) cables
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- Configurable clock rate for the transmit (Tx) clock and receive (Rx) clock

For pinouts of PIM cable connectors for serial PIMs, see “Serial PIM Cable Specifications” on page 189.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

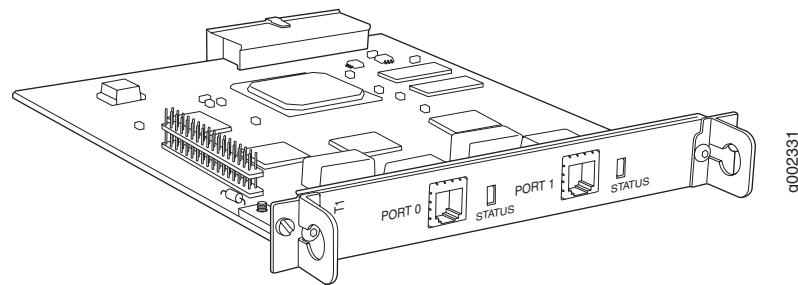
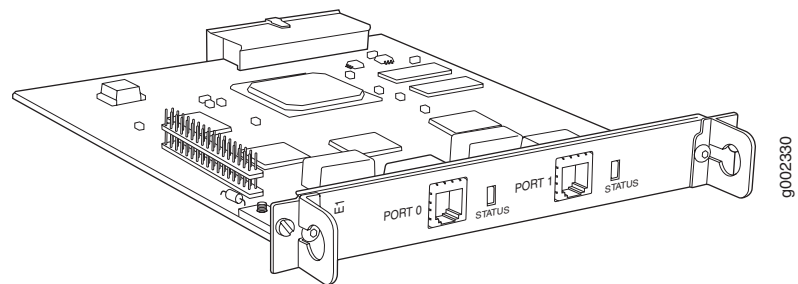
Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 28 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 28: Status LEDs for Serial Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

### Dual-Port T1 or E1 PIM

The Dual-Port T1 PIM (Figure 25) and Dual-Port E1 PIM (Figure 26) are supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers and provide a physical connection to T1 or E1 network media types. Each PIM has two physical T1 or E1 ports with an integrated channel service unit (CSU) or data service unit (DSU).

**Figure 25: Dual-Port T1 PIM****Figure 26: Dual-Port E1 PIM**

The Dual-Port T1 and E1 PIMs provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated CSU/DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- 56-Kbps and 64-Kbps modes
- ANSI T1.102, T1.107, and T1.403 standards compliance
- G.703, G.704, and G.706 E1 standards compliance
- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Loopback, bit error rate test (BERT), T1 facilities data link (FDL), and long buildout diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for T1 and E1 PIMs, see “E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts” on page 199.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 29 describes the meaning of the LED states.

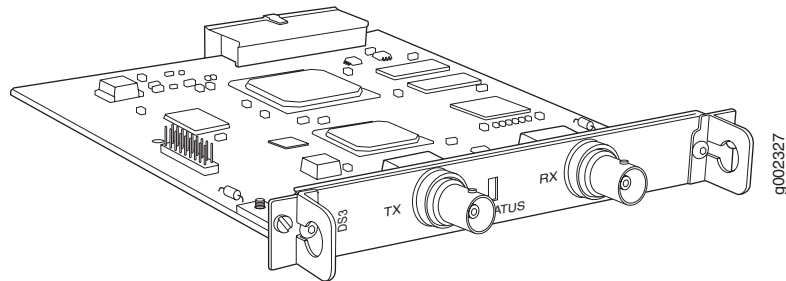
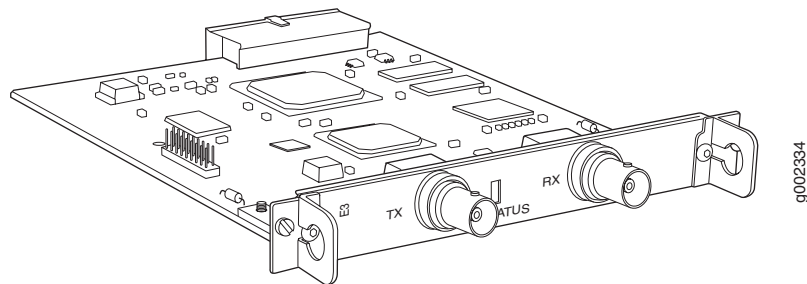


**Table 29: Status LEDs for T1 and E1 Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Unlit	Off	Offline.

### T3 or E3 PIM

The T3 (also known as DS3) PIM (Figure 27) and E3 PIM (Figure 28) are supported on J6300 Services Routers only and provide a physical connection to T3 or E3 network media types. The T3 and E3 PIMs include one physical T3 or E3 port with an integrated data service unit (DSU).

**Figure 27: T3 PIM****Figure 28: E3 PIM**

The T3 and E3 PIMs provide the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Integrated DSU—Eliminates the need for a separate external device
- Subrate and scrambling options with support for major DSU vendors

- Independent internal and external clocking system
- Loopback (payload-supported only on T3 PIM, local, and remote), bit error rate test (BERT), and T3 far-end alarm and control (FEAC) diagnostics

For pinouts of cable connectors for T3 and E3 PIMs, see “E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout” on page 202.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

Status LEDs indicate port status. Table 30 describes the meaning of the LED states.

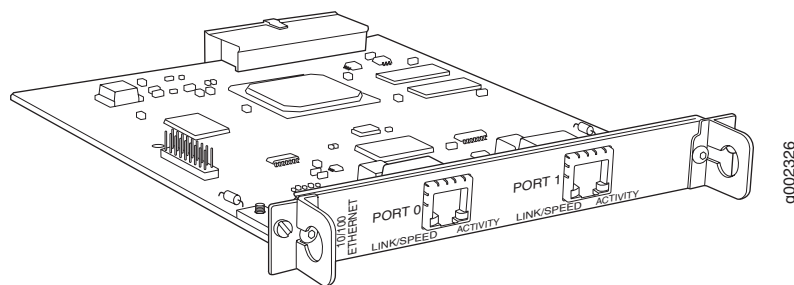
**Table 30: Status LEDs for T3 and E3 Ports**

Color	State	Description
Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.
Yellow	On steadily	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loopback mode.</li> <li>■ T3 (DS3)—Remote endpoint is in red alarm failure.</li> <li>■ E3—Remote defect indication (RDI).</li> </ul>
Unlit	Off	Offline.

### Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM

The Dual-Port 10/100-Mbps Fast Ethernet PIM (Figure 29) is supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers. The Fast Ethernet PIM has two physical Fast Ethernet ports.

**Figure 29: Fast Ethernet PIM**



The Fast Ethernet PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Full-duplex and half-duplex modes
- Media access control (MAC) address filtering
- Autonegotiation through medium-dependent interface (MDI) and MDI crossover (MDI-X) support

For pinouts of cable connectors for Fast Ethernet PIMs, see “RJ-45 Connector Pinout for the Routing Engine (Ethernet) Port” on page 198.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

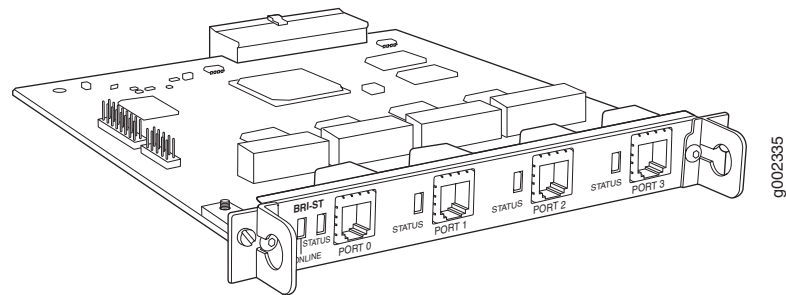
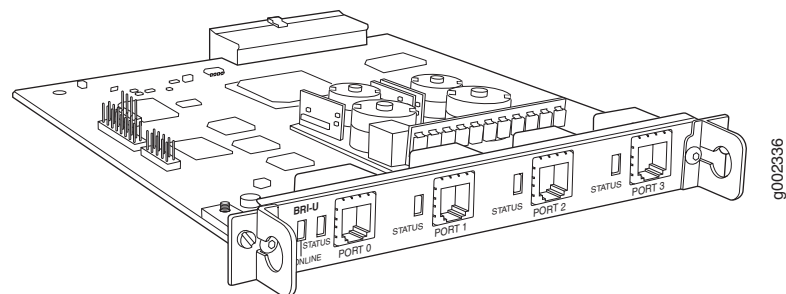
Fast Ethernet LEDs indicate link status, port speed, and activity. Table 31 describes the meaning of the LEDs.

**Table 31: LEDs for Fast Ethernet Ports**

Label	Color	State	Description
LINK/SPEED	Green (100 Mbps)	On steadily	Online and link is active.
	Yellow (10 Mbps)		
	Red	Disconnected	Link is unavailable.
ACTIVITY	Green	Blinking	Online with network traffic.
	Green	On steadily	Online without traffic.

### 4-Port ISDN BRI PIMs

The 4-port ISDN BRI PIMs are supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers. Each ISDN BRI PIM has four physical ports that support the ISDN BRI S/T (Figure 30) or ISDN BRI U (Figure 31) interface type.

**Figure 30: ISDN BRI S/T PIM****Figure 31: ISDN BRI U PIM**

ISDN BRI PIMs provide the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- Bandwidth on demand
- Dial backup
- Dial-on-demand routing backup (floating static and dialer watch)

For pinouts of cable connectors for ISDN PIMs, see “ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout” on page 202.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

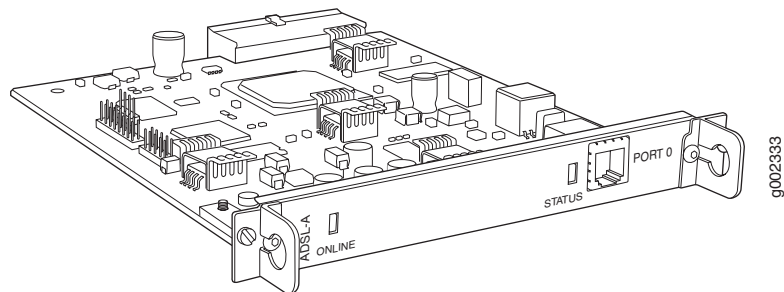
ISDN LEDs indicate PIM and port status. Table 32 describes the meaning of the LED states.

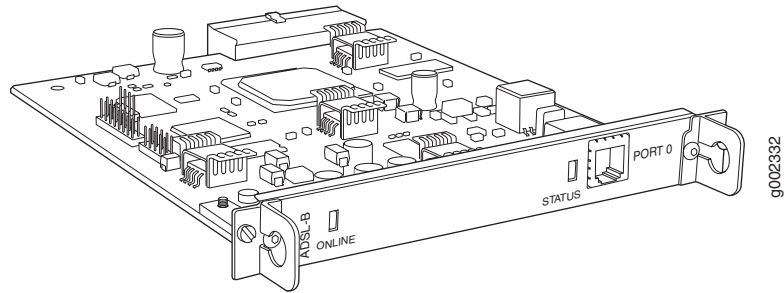
**Table 32: LEDs for ISDN BRI S/T and U PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	Blinking	Call setup is successful on either the B1 or B2 channel.
	Green	On steadily	ISDN Layer 2 is active.
	Amber	On steadily	■ ISDN Layer 1 is active.
			■ ISDN Layer 2 is unavailable.
	Red	Disconnected	■ BRI interface port is not connected.
			■ ISDN Layer 1 is unavailable.
STATUS	Unlit	Off	BRI interface is offline.
	Green	On steadily	PIM is online and operational.
	Red	Disconnected	PIM is not operational and needs replacement.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.

## ADSL PIM

The ADSL PIM is supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers and provides a single physical interface to asymmetric digital subscriber line (ADSL) network media types. The ADSL PIM, one supporting Annex A (Figure 32) over plain old telephone service (POTS) and the other Annex B (Figure 33) over ISDN, includes one physical ADSL port for an ATM-over-ADSL connection.

**Figure 32: ADSL Annex A PIM**

**Figure 33: ADSL Annex B PIM**

The ADSL PIM provides the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- ADSL, ADSL2, and ADSL2 + protocols on the same PIM
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5) encapsulation

For pinouts of cable connectors for ADSL PIMs, see “ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout” on page 202.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

The ADSL PIMs have two LEDs to indicate the status of the PIM and its port. Table 33 describes the meaning of the LED states.

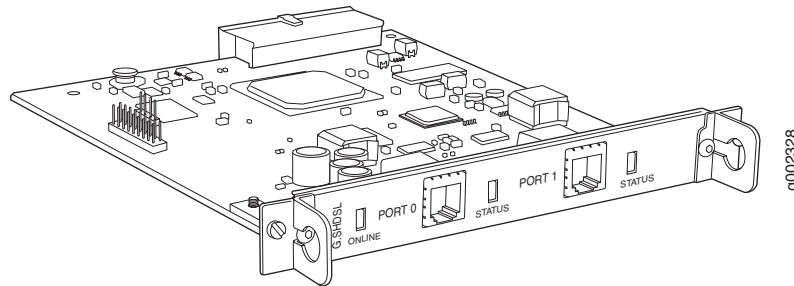
**Table 33: LEDs for ADSL PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	On steadily	PIM passed the self-test and is online and operational.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is offline.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	On steadily	Active with local or remote alarms. The router has detected a failure.

## G.SHDSL PIM

The G.SHDSL PIM (Figure 34) is supported on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers and provides symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line (SHDSL) physical interfaces to ATM network media types. The G.SHDSL PIM has two ports for ATM-over-SHDSL connections.

**Figure 34: G.SHDSL PIM**



The G.SHDSL PIM supports the following key features:

- Onboard network processor
- 2-port two-wire mode and 1-port four-wire mode



**NOTE:** Contact the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) before implementing 1-port four-wire mode.

- Programmable line rates in both modes:
  - 2-port two-wire mode supports autodetection of line rate and fixed line rates from 192 Kbps to 2.304 Mbps in 64-Kbps increments.
  - 1-port four-wire mode supports fixed line rates from 384 Kbps to 4.608 Mbps in 128-Kbps increments.
- 32 virtual channels per PIM
- ATM-over-G.SHDSL framing
- “Dying gasp” notification
- Local and remote loopback diagnostics
- ITU-T G.991.2, ITU-T G.994.1, and ITU-T G.997.1 standards compliance

For pinouts of cable connectors for G.SHDSL PIMs, see “ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout” on page 202.

For alarms, see the configuring and monitoring alarms information in the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

For installing and removing a PIM, see “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.

The G.SHDSL PIM has two LEDs to indicate the status of the PIM and its ports. Table 34 describes the meaning of the LED states.

**Table 34: LEDs for G.SHDSL PIMs**

Label	Color	State	Description
ONLINE	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	Disconnected	Initialization of the PIM has failed.
	Unlit	Off	PIM is booting.
STATUS	Green	On steadily	Online with no alarms or failures.
	Red	On steadily	Active with a local alarm. The router has detected a failure.



## Chapter 4

# Services Router User Interface Overview

You can use two user interfaces to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage a Services Router—the J-Web interface and the JUNOS command-line interface (CLI). This chapter contains the following topics:

- User Interface Overview on page 61
- Before You Begin on page 64
- Using the J-Web Interface on page 64
- Using the Command-Line Interface on page 69

## User Interface Overview

---

This section contains the following topics:

- J-Web Overview on page 61
- CLI Overview on page 62
- Comparison of Configuration Interfaces on page 62

## *J-Web Overview*

The J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) allows you to monitor, configure, troubleshoot, and manage the Services Router on a client by means of a Web browser with Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or HTTP over Secure Sockets Layer (HTTPS) enabled. The J-Web interface provides access to all the configuration statements supported by the router, so you can fully configure it without using the CLI.

The J-Web interface provides two methods of Services Router configuration:

- Quick Configuration
- Configuration editor

For more information, see “Comparison of Configuration Interfaces” on page 62.

In addition to configuration, you can use the J-Web interface to perform many monitoring, troubleshooting, and management tasks on the Services Router. For example, to display a summary of routing table entries, click **Monitor** in the task bar, then click **Routing** in the side pane. The routes are displayed in the main pane.

For more information about the J-Web interface, see “Using the J-Web Interface” on page 64.

## CLI Overview

The CLI is a straightforward command interface in which you type commands on a line and press Enter to execute them. The CLI provides command help, command completion, and Emacs-style keyboard sequences for moving around on the command line and scrolling through a buffer of recently executed commands.

The CLI has two modes:

- Operational mode—Complete set of commands to control the CLI environment, monitor and troubleshoot network connectivity, manage the Services Router, and enter configuration mode.
- Configuration mode—Complete set of commands to configure the Services Router. This guide refers to configuration mode as the *CLI configuration editor*. For more information, see “Comparison of Configuration Interfaces” on page 62.

For more information about the CLI, see “Using the Command-Line Interface” on page 69.

## Comparison of Configuration Interfaces

Table 35 describes and compares the interfaces you can use to configure a Services Router.

**Table 35: Services Router Configuration Interfaces**

<b>Interface</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Capabilities</b>	<b>Recommendations</b>
J-Web Quick Configuration	<p>Web browser pages for setting up the Services Router quickly and easily without configuring each statement individually.</p> <p>For example, use the Set Up Quick Configuration page to configure the Services Router for basic connectivity so you can manage it from the network.</p>	<p>Configure basic router services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Setup</li> <li>■ Secure access</li> <li>■ Interfaces</li> <li>■ User access</li> <li>■ SNMP notifications</li> <li>■ Routing and protocols, including data link switching (DLSw)</li> <li>■ Class of service (CoS)</li> <li>■ Security firewall filters and Network Address Translation (NAT)</li> <li>■ Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) services</li> <li>■ IPSec tunnels</li> <li>■ Real-time performance monitoring</li> <li>■ Input and output firewall filters (ACLs)</li> </ul>	Use for basic configuration.

**Table 35: Services Router Configuration Interfaces (continued)**

Interface	Description	Capabilities	Recommendations
J-Web configuration editor	<p>Web browser pages divided into panes in which you can do any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expand the entire configuration hierarchy and click a configuration statement to view or edit. The main pane displays all the options for the statement, with a text box for each option.</li> <li>Paste a complete configuration hierarchy into a scrollable text box, or edit individual lines.</li> <li>Upload or download a complete configuration.</li> <li>Roll back to a previous configuration.</li> </ul>	<p>Configure all router services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System parameters</li> <li>User access and accounting</li> <li>Interfaces</li> <li>SNMP network management</li> <li>Routing options, including multicast routing</li> <li>Routing protocols</li> <li>Routing policies</li> <li>Secure access</li> <li>Service interfaces, including stateful firewalls and virtual private networks (VPNs)</li> <li>Traffic engineering, including Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) and class-of-service (CoS) packet prioritization</li> <li>Chassis properties</li> </ul>	<p>Use for complete configuration if you are not familiar with the JUNOS CLI or prefer a graphical interface.</p>
CLI configuration editor	<p>Interface in which you do either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Type commands on a line and press Enter to create a hierarchy of configuration statements.</li> <li>Create an ASCII text file that contains the statement hierarchy.</li> <li>Upload a complete configuration, or roll back to a previous configuration.</li> </ul>		<p>Use for complete configuration if you know the JUNOS CLI or prefer a command interface.</p>

## Before You Begin

Before you start the user interface, you must perform the initial Services Router configuration described in “Establishing Basic Connectivity” on page 107. After the initial configuration, you use your username and password, and the hostname or IP address of the router, to start the user interface.

## Using the J-Web Interface

This section contains the following topics:

- Starting the J-Web Interface on page 65
- J-Web Layout on page 65

- J-Web Sessions on page 69

## Starting the J-Web Interface

To start the J-Web interface:

1. Launch your HTTP- or HTTPS-enabled Web browser.

To use HTTPS, you must have installed a certificate on the Services Router and enabled HTTPS. For more information, see “Configuring Secure Web Access with Quick Configuration” on page 118.



**NOTE:** If the Services Router is running the worldwide version of the JUNOS Internet software and you are using the Microsoft Internet Explorer Web browser, you must disable the Use SSL 3.0 option in the Web browser to access the Services Router.

---

2. After `http://` or `https://` in your Web browser, type the hostname or IP address of the Services Router and press Enter.

The J-Web login page appears.

3. On the login page, type your username and password, and click **Log In**.

To correct or change the username or password you typed, click **Reset**, type the new entry or entries, and click **Log In**.

The J-Web **Quick Configuration > Set Up** (see Figure 35) or **Monitor > System** page appears.

To explicitly terminate a J-Web session at any time, click **Logout** in the top pane.

## J-Web Layout

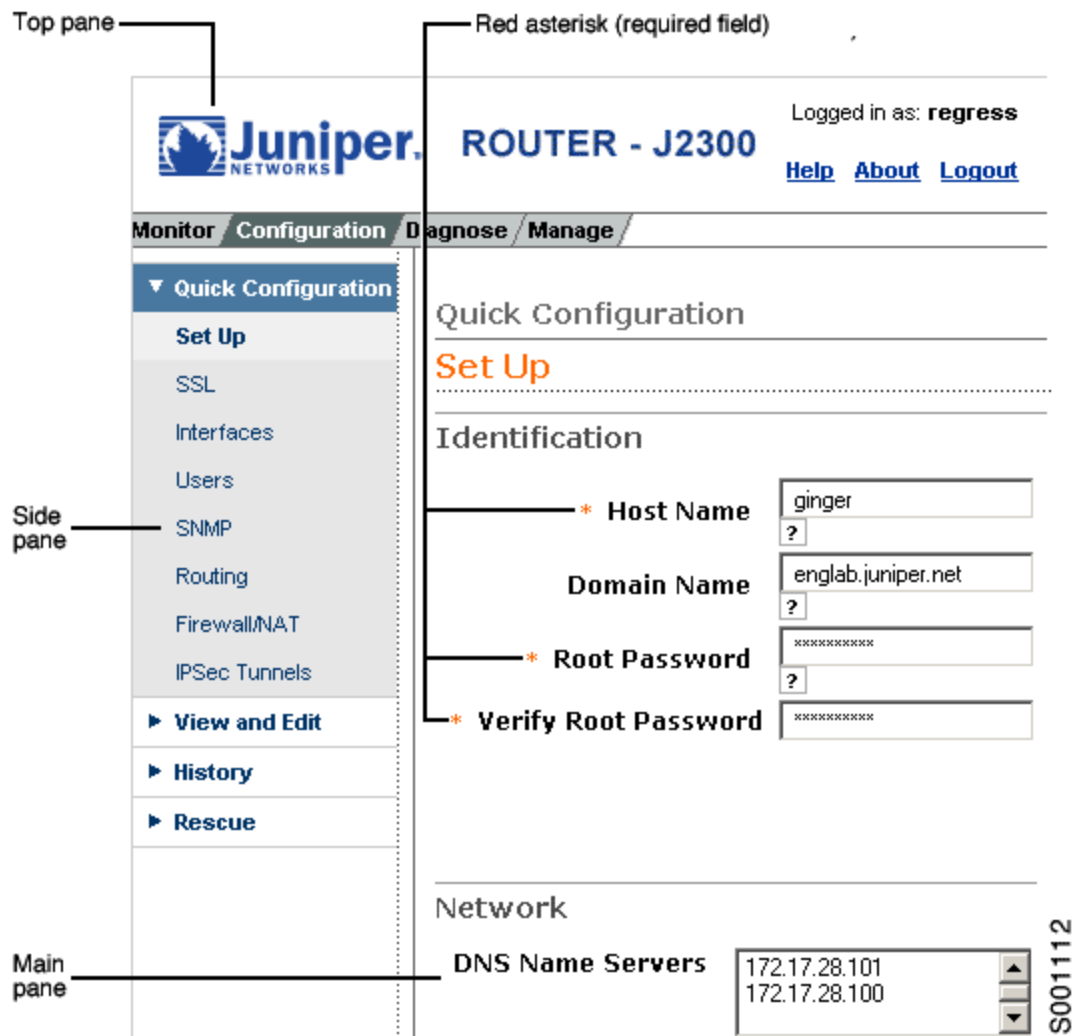
Each page of the J-Web interface is divided into the following panes shown in Figure 35 and Figure 36:

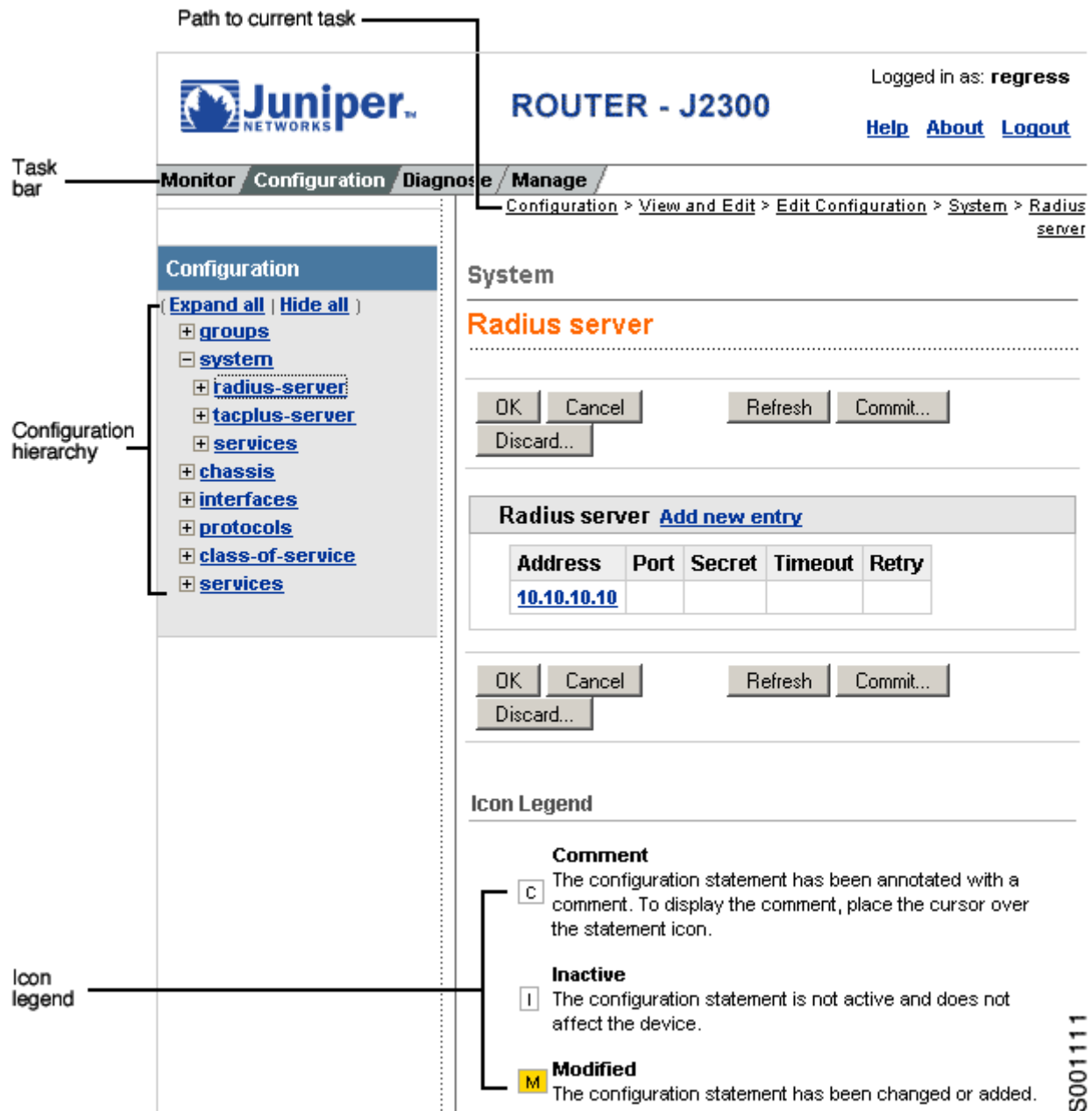
- Top pane—Displays identifying information and links.
- Main pane—Location where you monitor, configure, diagnose, and manage the Services Router by entering information in text boxes, making selections, and clicking buttons.
- Side pane—Displays suboptions of the Monitor, Configuration, Diagnose, or Manage task currently displayed in the main pane. Click a suboption to access it in the main pane.
- Bottom pane—Displays copyright and trademark information.

The layout of the panes allows you to quickly navigate through the interface. Table 36 summarizes the elements of the J-Web interface.

You navigate the J-Web interface, move forward and backward, scroll pages, and expand and collapse elements as you do in a typical Web browser interface.

**Figure 35: J-Web Layout**



**Figure 36: J-Web Layout—Configuration Editor****Table 36: Summary of J-Web Elements**

J-Web Interface Element	Description
<b>Top Pane</b>	
Juniper Networks logo	Link to <a href="http://www.juniper.net">www.juniper.net</a> in a new browser window.

**Table 36: Summary of J-Web Elements (continued)**

<b>J-Web Interface Element</b>	<b>Description</b>
<i>hostname – model</i>	Hostname and model of the Services Router.
Logged in as: <i>username</i>	Username you used to log in to the Services Router.
Help	Link to context-sensitive help information.
About	Displays information about the J-Web Interface, such as the version number.
Logout	Ends your current login session with the Services Router and returns you to the login page.
Task bar	Menu of J-Web main options. Click to access. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Monitor</b>—View information about configuration and hardware on the Services Router.</li> <li>■ <b>Configuration</b>—Configure the Services Router with Quick Configuration or the configuration editor, and view configuration history.</li> <li>■ <b>Diagnose</b>—Troubleshoot network connectivity problems.</li> <li>■ <b>Manage</b>—Manage files and licenses, upgrade software, and reboot the Services Router.</li> </ul>
<b>Main Pane</b>	
Help (?) icon	Displays useful information—such as the definition, format, and valid range of an option—when you move the cursor over the question mark.
Red asterisk (*)	Indicates a required field.
Path to current task	Path of main options and suboptions you selected to display the current main and side panes.
Icon Legend	(Applies to the configuration editor only) Explains icons that appear in the user interface to provide information about configuration statements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ C—Comment. Move your cursor over the icon to view a comment about the configuration statement.</li> <li>■ I—Inactive. The configuration statement does not affect the Services Router.</li> <li>■ M—Modified. The configuration statement is added or modified.</li> <li>■ *—Mandatory. The configuration statement must have a value.</li> </ul>
<b>Side Pane</b>	
Configuration hierarchy	(Applies to the configuration editor only) Displays the hierarchy of committed statements in the Services Router configuration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Click <b>Expand all</b> to display the entire hierarchy.</li> <li>■ Click <b>Hide all</b> to display only the statements at the top level.</li> <li>■ Click plus signs ( + ) to expand individual items.</li> <li>■ Click minus signs ( - ) to hide individual items.</li> </ul>



## J-Web Sessions

You establish a J-Web session with the Services Router through an HTTP- or HTTPS-enabled Web browser. The HTTPS protocol, which uses 128-bit encryption, is available only in domestic versions of the JUNOS software. To use HTTPS, you must have installed a certificate on the Services Router and enabled HTTPS.

When you attempt to log in through the J-Web interface, the Services Router authenticates your username with the same methods used for telnet and SSH.

The Services Router can support multiple J-Web sessions for a single user who logs in to each session. However, if a single user attempts to launch multiple J-Web *windows*—for example, by right-clicking a link to launch another instance of a Web browser—the session can have unpredictable results.

If the Services Router does not detect any activity through the J-Web interface for 15 minutes, the session times out and is terminated. You must log in again to begin a new session.

To explicitly terminate a J-Web session at any time, click **Logout** in the top pane.

## Using the Command-Line Interface

---

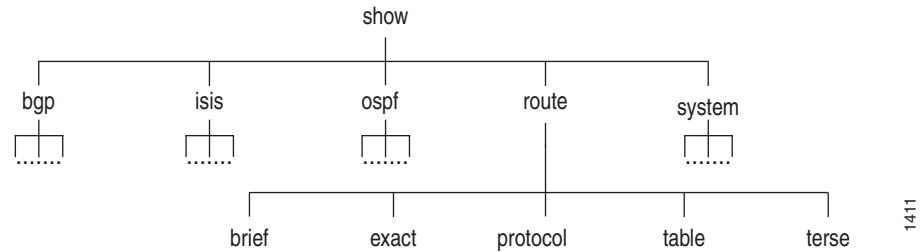
This section contains the following topics:

- CLI Command Hierarchy on page 69
- Starting the CLI on page 70
- CLI Operational Mode on page 71
- CLI Configuration Mode on page 72
- CLI Basics on page 73

For more information about the CLI, see the *JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide*.

### CLI Command Hierarchy

The CLI commands are organized hierarchically, with commands that perform a similar function grouped together under the same level. For example, all commands that display information about the Services Router system and system software are grouped under the **show** command, and all commands that display information about the routing table are grouped under the **show route** command. Figure 37 illustrates a portion of the **show** command hierarchy.

**Figure 37: CLI Command Hierarchy Example**

To execute a command, you enter the full command name, starting at the top level of the hierarchy. For example, to display a brief view of the routes in the routing table, use the command `show route brief`.

The hierarchical organization results in commands that have a regular syntax and provides the following features that simplify CLI use:

- Consistent command names—Commands that provide the same type of function have the same name, regardless of the portion of the software they are operating on. For example, all `show` commands display software information and statistics, and all `clear` commands erase various types of system information.
- Lists and short descriptions of available commands—Information about available commands is provided at each level of the CLI command hierarchy. If you type a question mark (?) at any level, you see a list of the available commands along with a short description of each command.
- Command completion—Command completion for command names (keywords) and command options is also available at each level of the hierarchy. If you type a partial command name followed immediately by a question mark (with no intervening space), you see a list of commands that match the partial name you typed.

## Starting the CLI

To start the CLI:

1. Establish a connection with the Services Router:
  - To access the router remotely from the network, enter the command you typically use to establish a remote connection (such as `telnet` or `ssh`) using the router hostname.
  - To access the router through a management device attached to the console port, start the terminal application.
2. Log in using your username and password.

After you log in, you enter a UNIX shell.

3. Start the CLI.

```
user# cli
user@host>
```

The presence of the angle bracket (>) prompt indicates the CLI has started. By default, the prompt is preceded by a string that contains your username and the hostname of the Services Router.

To exit the CLI and return to the UNIX shell, enter the quit command.

## CLI Operational Mode

The CLI has two modes: *operational* and *configuration*. When you log in to the Services Router and the CLI starts, you are at the top level of operational mode.

To view a list of top-level operational mode commands, type a question mark (?) at the command-line prompt.

```
user@host> ?
Possible completions:
clear          Clear information in the system
configure      Manipulate software configuration information
file           Perform file operations
help           Provide help information
monitor        Show real-time debugging information
mtrace         Trace multicast path from source to receiver
ping           Ping remote target
quit           Exit the management session
request        Make system-level requests
restart        Restart software process
set            Set CLI properties, date/time, craft interface message
show           Show system information
ssh            Start secure shell on another host
start          Start shell
telnet         Telnet to another host
test           Perform diagnostic debugging
traceroute     Trace route to remote host
```

At the top level of operational mode are a number of broad groups of CLI commands that are used to perform the following functions:

- Control the CLI environment.
- Monitor and troubleshoot the router.
- Connect to other systems.
- Manage files and software images.
- Control software processes.
- Stop and reboot the router.
- Enter configuration mode.

To control the CLI environment, see “Configuring the CLI Environment” on page 75. To enter configuration mode, see “CLI Configuration Mode” on page 72. For information about the other CLI operational mode functions, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## CLI Configuration Mode

To configure the Services Router, including system parameters, routing protocols, interfaces, network management, and user access, you must enter configuration mode. In configuration mode, the CLI provides commands to configure the router, load a text (ASCII) file that contains the router configuration, activate a configuration, and save the configuration to a text file.

You enter configuration mode by entering the `configure` operational mode command. The CLI prompt changes from `user@host>` to `user@host#`.

To view a list of configuration mode commands, type a question mark (?) at the command-line prompt. (You do not need to press Enter after typing the question mark.)

```

user@host# ?
Possible completions:
  Enter          Execute this command
  activate       Remove the inactive tag from a statement
  annotate       Annotate the statement with a comment
  commit        Commit current set of changes
  copy          Copy a statement
  deactivate     Add the inactive tag to a statement
  delete        Delete a data element
  edit          Edit a sub-element
  exit          Exit from this level
  help          Provide help information
  insert        Insert a new ordered data element
  load          Load configuration from ASCII file
  quit          Quit from this level
  rename        Rename a statement
  rollback      Roll back to previous committed configuration
  run           Run an operational-mode command
  save          Save configuration to ASCII file
  set           Set a parameter
  show          Show a parameter
  status        Show users currently editing configuration
  top           Exit to top level of configuration
  up            Exit one level of configuration
  wildcard      Wildcard operations

```

The JUNOS software configuration consists of a hierarchy of *statements*. There are two types of statements: *container statements*, which contain other statements, and *leaf statements*, which do not contain other statements. All the container and leaf statements together form the configuration hierarchy.

Each statement consists of a fixed keyword and, optionally, an identifier that you define, such as the name of an interface or a username.

To configure the Services Router or to modify an existing configuration, you add statements to the configuration with the `edit` and `set` configuration mode commands. For more information about the CLI configuration editor and configuration mode, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide* and the JUNOS software configuration guides.

## CLI Basics

This section contains the following topics:

- Editing Keystrokes on page 73
- Command Completion on page 74
- Online Help on page 74
- Configuring the CLI Environment on page 75

### Editing Keystrokes

In the CLI, you use keystrokes to move around on and edit the command line, and to scroll through a list of recently executed commands. Table 37 lists some typical CLI editing tasks and the keystrokes that perform them.

**Table 37: CLI Editing Keystrokes**

Task Category	Action	Keyboard Sequence
Move the cursor.	Move the cursor back one character.	Ctrl-b
	Move the cursor back one word.	Esc b
	Move the cursor forward one character.	Ctrl-f
	Move the cursor forward one word.	Esc f
	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.	Ctrl-e
Delete characters.	Delete the character before the cursor.	Ctrl-h, Delete, or Backspace
	Delete the character at the cursor.	Ctrl-d
	Delete all characters from the cursor to the end of the command line.	Ctrl-k
	Delete all characters on the command line.	Ctrl-u or Ctrl-x
	Delete the word before the cursor.	Ctrl-w or Esc Backspace
	Delete the word after the cursor.	Esc d
Insert recently deleted text.	Insert the most recently deleted text at the cursor.	Ctrl-y
Redraw the screen.	Redraw the current line.	Ctrl-l

**Table 37: CLI Editing Keystrokes (continued)**

<b>Task Category</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Keyboard Sequence</b>
Display previous command lines.	Scroll backward through the list of recently executed commands.	Ctrl-p
	Scroll forward through the list of recently executed commands.	Ctrl-n
	Search the CLI history in reverse order for lines matching the search string.	Ctrl-r
	Search the CLI history by typing some text at the prompt, followed by the keyboard sequence. The CLI attempts to expand the text into the most recent word in the history for which the text is a prefix.	Esc /
Repeat keyboard sequences.	Specify the number of times to execute a keyboard sequence. Replace <i>number</i> with a number from 1 through 9, and replace <i>sequence</i> with a keyboard sequence in this table.	Esc <i>number sequence</i>

## Command Completion

You do not always have to remember or type the full command or option name for the CLI to recognize it. To display all possible command or option completions, type the partial command followed immediately by a question mark (?).

To complete a command or option that you have partially typed, press Tab or Spacebar. If the partially typed letters uniquely identify a command, the complete command name appears. Otherwise, a message indicates that your entry is ambiguous or invalid. Possible command completions are displayed if your entry is ambiguous.

You can also use command completion on filenames and usernames. To display all possible values, type one or more characters followed immediately by a question mark. To complete these partial entries, press Tab only. Pressing Spacebar does not work.

## Online Help

The CLI provides context-sensitive help at every level of the command hierarchy. The help information tells you which commands are available at the current level in the hierarchy and provides a brief description of each.

To get help while in the CLI, type a question mark (?) in one of the following ways:

- Type a question mark at the command-line prompt—The CLI lists the available commands and options. For examples, see “CLI Operational Mode” on page 71 and “CLI Configuration Mode” on page 72.

- Type a question mark after entering the complete name of a command or command option—The CLI lists the available commands and options, then redisplay the command names and options that you typed:

```
user@host> request ?

Possible completions:
  chassis          Perform chassis-specific operations
  ipsec            Perform IP Security operations
  message          Send text message to other users
  routing-engine   Log in to Routing Engine
  security         Perform security-level operations
  services         Perform service application operations
  support          Perform JUNOS support tasks
  system          Perform system-level operations
user@host> request
```

- Type a question mark in the middle of a command name—The CLI lists possible command completions that match the letters you have entered so far, then redisplay the letters that you typed. For example, to list all operational mode commands that start with the letter s, type the following:

```
user@host> s?

Possible completions:
  set              Set CLI properties, date/time, craft interface message
  show            Show system information
  ssh             Start secure shell on another host
  start           Start shell
user@host> s
```

The CLI also provides usage guidelines and summary information for text contained in configuration statements if you enter the **help topic** and **help reference** commands. For example, to display usage guidelines for the OSPF hello interval, enter the command **help topic ospf hello-interval**. You can enter help commands in operational or configuration mode.

## Configuring the CLI Environment

You can configure the CLI environment for your current login session. Your settings are not retained when you exit the CLI.

To display the current CLI settings, enter the **show cli** command:

```
user@host> show cli
CLI complete-on-space set to on
CLI idle-timeout disabled
CLI restart-on-upgrade set to on
CLI screen-length set to 49
CLI screen-width set to 132
CLI terminal is 'vt100'
CLI is operating in enhanced mode
CLI working directory is '/cf/var/home/remote'
```

To change the CLI environment, use the **set cli operational mode** command:

```

user@host> set cli ?
Possible completions:
complete-on-space  Set whether typing space completes current word
directory          Set working directory
idle-timeout       Set maximum idle time before login session ends
prompt            Set CLI command prompt string
restart-on-upgrade Set whether CLI prompts to restart after software upgrade
screen-length      Set number of lines on screen
screen-width       Set number of characters on a line
terminal          Set terminal type

```

Table 38 shows how you can change the CLI environment features.

**Table 38: Configuring the CLI Environment**

Environment Feature	CLI Command	Default Setting	Options
Command completion	set cli complete-on-space (on   off)	on—Pressing Tab or Spacebar completes a command.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set <b>off</b> to allow only Tab for command completion.</li> <li>■ Set <b>on</b> to re-enable Tab and Spacebar for command completion.</li> </ul>
Your working directory	set cli directory <i>path</i> <i>8</i>	/cf/var/home/remote	Replace <i>path</i> with the directory you want to enter when you log in to the Services Router.
Minutes of idle time	set cli idle-time <i>minutes</i>	Your session never times out unless your login class specifies a timeout.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To enable the timeout feature, replace <i>timeout</i> with a value between 1 and 100,000.</li> <li>■ To disable the timeout feature, replace <i>timeout</i> with 0.</li> </ul>
Your session prompt	set cli prompt <i>string</i>	<i>user@host</i> >	Replace <i>string</i> with the prompt you want. If the prompt contains spaces or special characters, enclose <i>string</i> in quotation marks (" ").
Restart-after-upgrade prompt	set cli restart-on-upgrade (on   off)	CLI prompts you to restart the Services Router after a software upgrade.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Set <b>off</b> to disable the prompt for the session.</li> <li>■ Set <b>on</b> to re-enable the prompt.</li> </ul>



**Table 38: Configuring the CLI Environment (continued)**

Environment Feature	CLI Command	Default Setting	Options
Number of CLI output line displayed at once	set cli screen-length <i>length</i>	Variable (depends on terminal type).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To change the number of lines displayed on the screen, replace <i>length</i> with a value between 1 and 100,000.</li> <li>■ To disable the display of a set number of lines, replace <i>length</i> with 0. (This feature can be useful when you are issuing CLI commands from scripts.)</li> </ul>
Number of CLI characters displayed on a line	set cli screen-width <i>width</i>	Variable (depends on terminal type).	To change the number of characters displayed on a line, replace <i>width</i> with a value between 0 and 100,000.
Your terminal type.	set cli terminal <i>terminal-type</i>	unknown, or set by console.	Replace <i>terminal-type</i> with one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ansi</li> <li>■ vt100</li> <li>■ small-xterm</li> <li>■ xterm</li> </ul>



## **Part 2**

# **Installing a Services Router**

- Preparing for Router Installation on page 81
- Installing and Connecting a Services Router on page 91
- Establishing Basic Connectivity on page 107
- Configuring Autoinstallation on page 129
- Installing and Managing J-series Licenses on page 135



## Chapter 5

# Preparing for Router Installation

Before installing a J-series Services Router, make sure that your site has the proper operating environment and equipment. Use the checklist at the end of the chapter to help you prepare you site.

This chapter discusses the following topics:

- General Site Guidelines on page 81
- Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements on page 82
- Rack Requirements on page 82
- Router Environmental Tolerances on page 83
- Fire Safety Requirements on page 84
- Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications on page 85
- Network Cable Specifications on page 89
- ISDN Provisioning on page 90
- Site Preparation Checklist on page 90

### General Site Guidelines

---

The following precautions help you plan an acceptable operating environment for your Services Router and avoid environmentally caused equipment failures:

- For the cooling system to function properly, the airflow around the chassis must be unrestricted. Allow at least 6 in. (15.2 cm) of clearance between the front and back of the chassis and adjacent equipment. Ensure that there is adequate circulation in the installation location.
- Follow ESD procedures described in “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209, to avoid damaging equipment. Static discharge can cause components to fail completely or intermittently over time.
- Install blank PIM panels in empty slots, to prevent any interruption or reduction in the flow of air across internal components.

## Desktop and Wall Mounting Requirements

---

The J2300 Services Router can be installed on a desktop or wall. When choosing a location, allow at least 6 in. (15.2 cm) of clearance between the front and back of the chassis and adjacent equipment or walls.

If you are mounting the J2300 router on a wall, use wall screws or wall anchors capable of supporting the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). If possible, install the wall anchors into wall studs, which provide added support for the chassis.

## Rack Requirements

---

All J-series Services Routers can be installed in a rack. J4300 and J6300 Services Routers must be installed in a rack. Many types of racks are acceptable, including front-mount racks, four-post (telco) racks, and center-mount racks.

The following sections describe rack requirements:

- Rack Size and Strength on page 82
- Spacing of Mounting Holes on page 83
- Connection to Building Structure on page 83

### Rack Size and Strength

The Services Router is designed for installation in a rack that complies with either of the following standards:

- A 19-in. rack as defined in Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment (document number EIA-310-D) published by the Electronics Industry Association (<http://www.eia.org>)
- A 600-mm rack as defined in the four-part *Equipment Engineering (EE); European telecommunications standard for equipment practice* (document numbers ETS 300 119-1 through 119-4) published by the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (<http://www.etsi.org>)

The horizontal spacing between the rails in a rack that complies with this standard is usually wider than the router's mounting ears, which measure 19 in. (48.2 cm) from outer edge to outer edge. Use approved wing devices to narrow the opening between the rails as required.

The rack rails must be spaced widely enough to accommodate the router chassis's external dimensions:

- A J2300 chassis is 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) high, 12.37 in. (31.4 cm) deep, and 17.25 in. (43.8 cm) wide.
- A J4300 or J6300 chassis is 3.5 in. (8.9 cm) high, 19 in. (48.3 cm) deep, and 17 in. (43.2 cm) wide.

The outer edges of the mounting ears extend the width of either chassis to 19 in. (48.2 cm), and the front of the chassis extends approximately 0.5 in. (1.27 cm) beyond the mounting ears. The spacing of rails and adjacent racks must also allow for the clearances around the router and rack. (See “General Site Guidelines” on page 81.)



**CAUTION:** If you are mounting the router in a cabinet, be sure that ventilation is sufficient to prevent overheating.

If a front-mount rack is used, we recommend supporting the back of the router with a shelf or other structure.

---

The J2300 chassis height of 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) equals 1 U. The J4300 and J6300 chassis height of 3.5 in. (8.9 cm) equals 2 U. Each *U* is a standard rack unit defined in Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment (document number EIA-310-D) published by the Electronics Industry Association.

### **Spacing of Mounting Holes**

The mounting holes in the mounting brackets provided with the J2300 Services Router chassis are spaced 1.25 in. (3.2 cm) apart, measured from the center of each hole.

The mounting holes in the mounting brackets attached to the J4300 and J6300 chassis are spaced in two groups. The space between the holes in each group is 0.6 in. (1.5 cm) apart, measured from the center of each hole. The space between the two groups is 1.75 in. (4.4 cm) apart, measured from the center of the lower hole in the top group to the upper hole in the bottom group.

### **Connection to Building Structure**

Always secure the rack to the structure of the building. If your geographical area is subject to earthquakes, bolt the rack to the floor. For maximum stability, also secure the rack to ceiling brackets. For more information, see “Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings” on page 226.

### **Router Environmental Tolerances**

---

Table 39 specifies the environmental conditions required for normal Services Router operation. In addition, the site must be as dust-free as possible. Dust can clog air intake vents, reducing cooling system efficiency. Check vents frequently, cleaning them as necessary.

**Table 39: Router Environmental Tolerances**

Description	Value
Altitude	No performance degradation to 10,000 ft (3048 m)
Relative humidity	Normal operation ensured in relative humidity range of 5 % to 90 %, noncondensing
Temperature	Normal operation ensured in temperature range of 32°F (0°C) to 104°F (40°C)  Non-operating storage temperature in shipping carton: –40°F (–40°C) to 158°F (70°C)
Seismic	Designed to meet Telcordia Technologies Zone 4 earthquake requirements
Maximum thermal output	J2300 chassis: 1638 BTU/hour (480 W)  J4300 chassis: 2457 BTU/hour (720 W)  J6300 chassis: 2457 BTU/hour (720 W)

## Fire Safety Requirements

In the event of a fire emergency involving Services Routers and other network equipment, the safety of people is the primary concern. Establish procedures for protecting people in the event of a fire emergency, provide safety training, and properly provision fire-control equipment and fire extinguishers.

In addition, establish procedures to protect your equipment in the event of a fire emergency. Juniper Networks products must be installed in an environment suitable for electronic equipment. We recommend that fire suppression equipment be available in the event of a fire in the vicinity of the equipment, and that all local fire, safety, and electrical codes and ordinances be observed when you are installing and operating your equipment.

### Fire Suppression

In the event of an electrical hazard or an electrical fire, first unplug the power cord. (For shutdown instructions, see “Powering a Services Router On and Off” on page 105.)

Then, use a Type C fire extinguisher, which uses noncorrosive fire retardants, to extinguish the fire. For more information about fire extinguishers, see “Fire Suppression Equipment” on page 84.

### Fire Suppression Equipment

Type C fire extinguishers, which use noncorrosive fire retardants such as carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and Halotron, are most effective for suppressing electrical fires. Type C fire extinguishers displace the oxygen from the point of combustion to



eliminate the fire. For extinguishing fire on or around equipment that draws air from the environment for cooling, use this type of inert oxygen displacement extinguisher instead of an extinguisher that leave residues on equipment.

Do not use multipurpose Type ABC chemical fire extinguishers (dry chemical fire extinguishers) near Juniper Networks equipment. The primary ingredient in these fire extinguishers is monoammonium phosphate, which is very sticky and difficult to clean. In addition, in minute amounts of moisture, monoammonium phosphate can become highly corrosive and corrodes most metals.



**NOTE:** To keep warranties effective, do not use a dry chemical fire extinguisher to control a fire at or near a Juniper Networks router. If a dry chemical fire extinguisher is used, the unit is no longer eligible for coverage under a service agreement.

---

Any equipment in a room in which a chemical fire extinguisher has been discharged is subject to premature failure and unreliable operation. The equipment is considered to be irreparably damaged.

We recommend that you dispose of any irreparably damaged equipment in an environmentally responsible manner.

## Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications

---

All Services Routers are available with either AC or DC power. For information about each router's power system, see "J2300 Power System" on page 18, "J4300 Power System" on page 30, and "J6300 Power System" on page 30.

For site wiring and power system guidelines, requirements, and specifications, see the following sections:

- Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines on page 85
- Router Power Requirements on page 86
- AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications on page 87
- DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications on page 88

### Site Electrical Wiring Guidelines

---



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only. DC-powered J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

---

When planning the electrical wiring at your site, consider the factors discussed in the following sections.

### Signaling Limitations

Improperly installed wires can emit radio interference. In addition, the potential for damage from lightning strikes increases if wires exceed recommended distances, or if wires pass between buildings. The electromagnetic pulse (EMP) caused by lightning can damage unshielded conductors and destroy electronic devices. If your site has previously experienced such problems, you might want to consult experts in electrical surge suppression and shielding.

### Radio Frequency Interference

You can reduce or eliminate the emission of radio frequency interference (RFI) from your site wiring by using twisted-pair cable with a good distribution of grounding conductors. If you must exceed the recommended distances, use a high-quality twisted-pair cable with one ground conductor for each data signal when applicable.

### Electromagnetic Compatibility

If your site is susceptible to problems with electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), particularly from lightning or radio transmitters, you might want to seek expert advice. Strong sources of electromagnetic interference (EMI) can destroy the signal drivers and receivers in the router and conduct power surges over the lines into the equipment, resulting in an electrical hazard. It is particularly important to provide a properly grounded and shielded environment and to use electrical surge-suppression devices.



**CAUTION:** To comply with intrabuilding lightning/surge requirements, intrabuilding wiring must be shielded, and the shield for the wiring must be grounded at both ends.

---

## Router Power Requirements

Table 40 lists the AC and DC power system electrical specifications for J-series Services Routers.

**Table 40: AC and DC Power System Electrical Specifications**

Item	Specification
AC input voltage	100 to 240 VAC nominal
	100 to 264 VAC operating range
AC input line frequency	47 to 63 Hz

**Table 40: AC and DC Power System Electrical Specifications (continued)**

Item	Specification
AC system current rating	4 to 2 A (J2300 Services Router)
	6 to 3 A (J4300 and J6300 Services Routers)
DC input voltage	–42 to –72 VDC operating range
DC system current rating	4 A @ –48 VDC (nominal, J2300 Services Router)
	8 A @ –48 VDC (nominal, J4300 and J6300 Services Routers)

### AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications



**NOTE:** The AC power cord for the Services Router is intended for use with the router only and not for any other use.

Detachable AC power cords, each 2.5 m (approximately 8 ft) long, are supplied with the Services Router. The appliance coupler at the female end of the cord inserts into the appliance inlet on the faceplate of the AC power supply. The coupler is type C19 as described by International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard 60320. The plug at the male end of the power cord fits into the power source receptacle that is standard for your geographical location.



**NOTE:** In North America, AC power cords must not exceed 4.5 m (approximately 14.75 ft) in. length, to comply with National Electrical Code (NEC) Sections 400-8 (NFPA 75, 5-2.2) and 210-52, and Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) Section 4-010(3). The cords supplied with the router are in compliance.

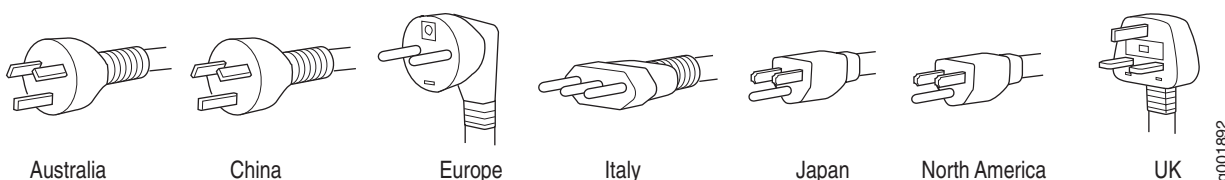
Table 41 lists power cord specifications and Figure 38 illustrates the plug on the AC power cord provided for each country or region.

**Table 41: AC Power Cord Specifications**

Country	Electrical Specifications	Plug Standards
Australia	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	AS/NZ 3112-1993
China	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	GB2099.1 1996 and GB1002 1996 (CH1-10P)
Europe (except Italy and United Kingdom)	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	CEE (7) VII
Italy	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	CEI 23-16/VII
Japan	125 VAC, 12 A, 50 Hz or 60 Hz	JIS 8303

**Table 41: AC Power Cord Specifications (continued)**

Country	Electrical Specifications	Plug Standards
North America	125 VAC, 10 A, 60 Hz	NEMA 5-15
United Kingdom	250 VAC, 10 A, 50 Hz	BS 1363A

**Figure 38: AC Plug Types**

**NOTE:** Power cords and cables must not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on them.

For information about the AC power supply, see “J2300 Power System” on page 18, “J4300 Power System” on page 30, or “J6300 Power System” on page 30.

To connect the power cord during initial installation, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

To replace the AC power cord, see “Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J2300 or J4300 Router” on page 165 or “Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J6300 Router” on page 173.

## DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications

Each DC power supply has a single DC input (–48 VDC and return) that requires a dedicated 15 A (–48 VDC) circuit breaker. If the J6300 router contains redundant DC power supplies, one power supply must be powered by a dedicated power feed derived from feed A, and the other power supply must be powered by a dedicated power feed derived from feed B. This configuration provides the commonly deployed A/B feed redundancy for the system.

Most sites distribute DC power through a main conduit that leads to frame-mounted DC power distribution panels, one of which might be located at the top of the rack that houses the router. A pair of cables (one input and one return) connects each set of terminal studs to the power distribution panel.



**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power

supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.



**WARNING:** Power plant ground and chassis ground must be connected to the same building ground.



**CAUTION:** Before router installation begins, a licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the grounding and power cables that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

---

Each DC power cable (–48 VDC and return) must be 14 AWG single-strand wire cable, or as permitted by the local code. Each lug attached to the power cables must be a ring-type, vinyl-insulated TV14-6R lug, or equivalent.



**NOTE:** Power cords and cables must not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on them.

---

For information about the DC power supply, see “J2300 Power System” on page 18, “J4300 Power System” on page 30, or “J6300 Power System” on page 30.

To connect the power cables during initial installation, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

To replace a DC power cable, see “Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J2300 or J4300 Router” on page 165 or “Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J6300 Router” on page 174.

## Network Cable Specifications

---

The Services Router supports interfaces that use various kinds of network cable. For information about the type of cable used by each interface, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.

## ISDN Provisioning

---

You might need a network termination type 1 (NT1) device to connect your ISDN interface to the ISDN service. Contact your service provider for details on the following information:

- External NT1 device and ISDN cable
- If the two items are required, where to obtain the items
- List of NT1 vendors

## Site Preparation Checklist

---

The checklist in Table 42 summarizes the tasks you need to perform when preparing a site for Services Router installation.

**Table 42: Site Preparation Checklist**

Item or Task	Performed By	Date	Notes
Verify that environmental factors such as temperature and humidity do not exceed router tolerances.			
Measure the distances between external power sources and the router installation site.			
Select the type of rack.			
Plan the rack location, including required space clearances.			
Secure the rack to the floor and the building structure.			
Acquire appropriate cables and connectors.			

## Chapter 6

# Installing and Connecting a Services Router

Make the appropriate preparations and verify the J-series equipment before installing a J-series Services Router and connecting it to a power source and the network.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Before You Begin on page 91
- Unpacking the J-series Services Router on page 92
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on page 94
- Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router on page 97
- Connecting Interface Cables to the Services Router on page 98
- Chassis Grounding on page 99
- Connecting Power to the Services Router on page 99
- Powering a Services Router On and Off on page 105

## Before You Begin

---

Before you begin installation, complete the following tasks:

- Read the information in “Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings” on page 235, with particular attention to “Chassis Lifting Guidelines” on page 225.
- Determine where to install the Services Router, and verify that the rack or installation site meets the requirements described in “Preparing for Router Installation” on page 81.
- For installation, gather the equipment and tools listed in Table 43.

**Table 43: Equipment and Tools Required for Services Router Installation**

<b>Desk Installation—J2300 Services Router Only</b>	<b>Wall Installation—J2300 Services Router Only</b>	<b>Rack Installation</b>
Rubber feet (provided)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Rubber feet (provided)</li> <li>■ Mounting brackets and screws (provided)</li> <li>■ Number 2 Phillips screwdriver</li> <li>■ Four wall screws or four mounting screws and anchors capable of supporting the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mounting brackets and screws (provided)</li> <li>■ Number 2 Phillips screwdriver</li> <li>■ Four (J2300) or eight (J4300 and J6300) mounting screws appropriate for your rack</li> </ul>

- To connect the router to power and ground, have ready a 14 AWG grounding cable and lug, as specified in “Chassis Grounding” on page 99, and the power cords or cords shipped with the router. (You must supply your own power cables if you have a DC-powered router.)



**NOTE:** The AC power cord for the Services Router is intended for use with the router only and not for any other use.

- To connect network interfaces, have ready a length of cable used by the interface, as specified in “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.
- If your router has ISDN ports, you might need an NT1 device to connect to the ISDN service. For details, see “ISDN Provisioning” on page 90.

## Unpacking the J-series Services Router

The Services Router is shipped in a cardboard carton and secured with foam packing material. The carton also contains an accessory box and quick start instructions.



**NOTE:** The router is maximally protected inside the shipping carton. Do not unpack it until you are ready to begin installation.

To unpack the router:

1. Move the shipping carton to a staging area as close to the installation site as possible, but where you have enough room to remove the router.
2. Position the carton so that the arrows are pointing up.
3. Open the top flaps on the shipping carton.



4. Remove the accessory box, and verify the contents against the parts inventory on the label attached to the carton.
5. Pull out the packing material holding the router in place.
6. Verify the contents of the carton against the packing list included with the router. A generic parts inventory appears in Table 44.
7. Save the shipping carton and packing materials in case you later need to move or ship the router.

**Table 44: Generic Inventory of Services Router Shipping Carton**

Component	J2300 Services Router	J4300 Services Router	J6300 Services Router
Chassis	1	1	1
Physical Interface Module (PIM)	<p>2 Fast Ethernet ports and one of the following sets of interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 2 E1 ports</li> <li>■ 2 E1 ports and 1 ISDN BRI S/T port</li> <li>■ 2 serial ports</li> <li>■ 2 serial ports and 1 ISDN BRI S/T or U port</li> <li>■ 2 T1 ports</li> <li>■ 2 T1 ports and 1 ISDN BRI U port</li> <li>■ 2 G.SHDSL ports</li> <li>■ 2 G.SHDSL ports and 1 ISDN BRI S/T port</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The interfaces installed in the J2300 Services Router are not field-replaceable. For more information, see “J2300 Chassis with Fixed PIMs” on page 39.</p>	<p>Between 0 and 6 of the following in any combination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 1-port ADSL Annex A or Annex B PIM</li> <li>■ 2-port G.SHDSL Annex A or Annex B PIM</li> <li>■ 1-port DS3 (T3) PIM (J6300 routers only)</li> <li>■ 2-port E1 PIM</li> <li>■ 1-port E3 PIM (J6300 routers only)</li> <li>■ 2-port Fast Ethernet PIM</li> <li>■ 4-port ISDN BRI S/T or U PIM</li> <li>■ 2-port serial PIM</li> <li>■ 2-port T1 PIM</li> </ul>	
Power supply	1 (fixed)	1 (fixed)	1 or 2

**Table 44: Generic Inventory of Services Router Shipping Carton (continued)**

Component	J2300 Services Router	J4300 Services Router	J6300 Services Router
Mounting brackets	2	2 (fixed)	2 (fixed)
Blank panels for slots without components	0	Depends on router configuration	Depends on router configuration

## Installing the J2300 Services Router



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only.

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a desk, on a wall, or in a rack. The J2300 Services Router includes mounting brackets that support either wall or rack mounting, and rubber feet for desk and wall mounting.

Install the J2300 Services Router as appropriate for your site, with one of the following procedures:

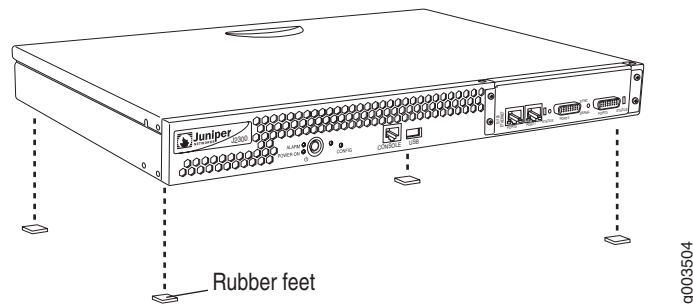
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk on page 94
- Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall on page 95
- Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack on page 96

### Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Desk

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a desk, table, or other level surface. The router is shipped with rubber feet in the accessory box. The rubber feet are necessary to stabilize the router on the desk.

To install the J2300 router on a desk:

1. Turn the chassis upside-down on the desk or work surface where you intend to operate the router.
2. Attach the provided rubber feet to the bottom of the chassis, as shown in Figure 39.
3. Turn the chassis right-side up on the desk or work surface.

**Figure 39: Attaching Rubber Feet to the J2300 Services Router**

### ***Installing the J2300 Services Router on a Wall***

You can install the J2300 Services Router on a wall. The router is shipped with mounting brackets and rubber feet in the accessory box. The rubber feet help stabilize the router on the wall and enhance airflow.

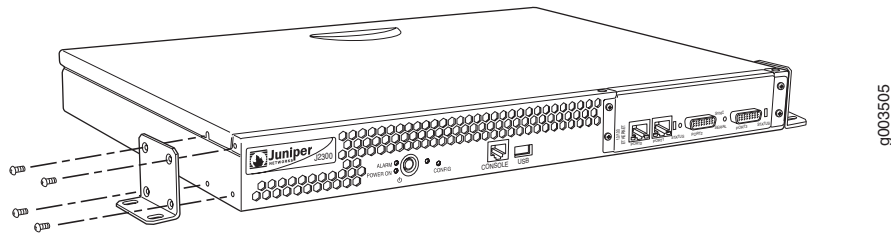
To install the J2300 router on a wall:

1. Turn the chassis upside-down on a desk or work surface near where you intend to operate the router.
2. Attach the provided rubber feet to the bottom of the chassis, as shown in Figure 39.
3. Turn the chassis right-side up, and place it on a flat surface.
4. Position a mounting bracket on each side of the chassis as shown in Figure 40.
5. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to install the screws that secure the mounting brackets to the chassis.
6. If you are using wall anchors to support the chassis, install two pairs of anchors on the wall, spaced 19 in. (48.3 cm) apart.



**CAUTION:** Mounting screws and wall anchors must be strong enough to support the full weight of the chassis, up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). Attaching the router to wall studs or using wall anchors provides extra support for the chassis.

7. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it on the wall.
8. Have a second person install two pairs of mounting screws through the bracket holes on either side of the router, to secure the router to the wall.
9. Verify that the mounting screws on one side are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.

**Figure 40: Attaching Mounting Brackets to Install a J2300 Services Router on a Wall**

### Installing the J2300 Services Router into a Rack

You can front-mount the J2300 Services Router in a rack. The router is shipped with mounting brackets in the accessory box. Many types of racks are acceptable, including four-post (telco) racks, enclosed cabinets, and open-frame racks. For more information about the type of rack or cabinet the J-series router can be installed into, see “Rack Requirements” on page 82.



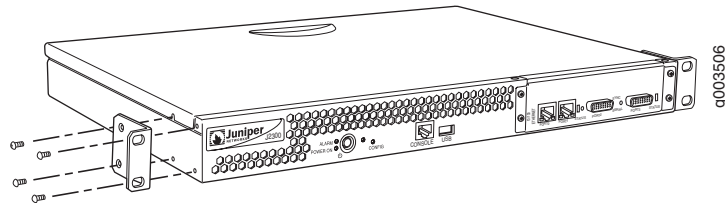
**NOTE:** If you are installing multiple routers in one rack, install the lowest one first and proceed upward in the rack.



**NOTE:** The chassis weighs up to 12 lb (5.4 kg). Have one person lift the chassis into the rack and a second person secure the mounting screws.

To install the J2300 router into a rack:

1. Position a mounting bracket on each side of the chassis as shown in Figure 41.
2. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to install the screws that secure the mounting brackets to the chassis.
3. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it in the rack.
4. Align the bottom hole in each mounting bracket with a hole in each rack rail, making sure the chassis is level.
5. Have a second person install a mounting screw into each of the two aligned holes. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to tighten the screws.
6. Install the second screw in each mounting bracket.
7. Verify that the mounting screws on one side of the rack are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.

**Figure 41: Attaching Mounting Brackets to Install a J2300 Services Router in a Rack**

## Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router



**WARNING:** DC-powered J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

You can front-mount the J4300 Services Router or J6300 Services Router in a rack. The router is shipped with mounting brackets installed. Many types of racks are acceptable, including four-post (telco) racks, enclosed cabinets, and open-frame racks. For more information about the type of rack or cabinet the J-series router can be installed into, see “Rack Requirements” on page 82.



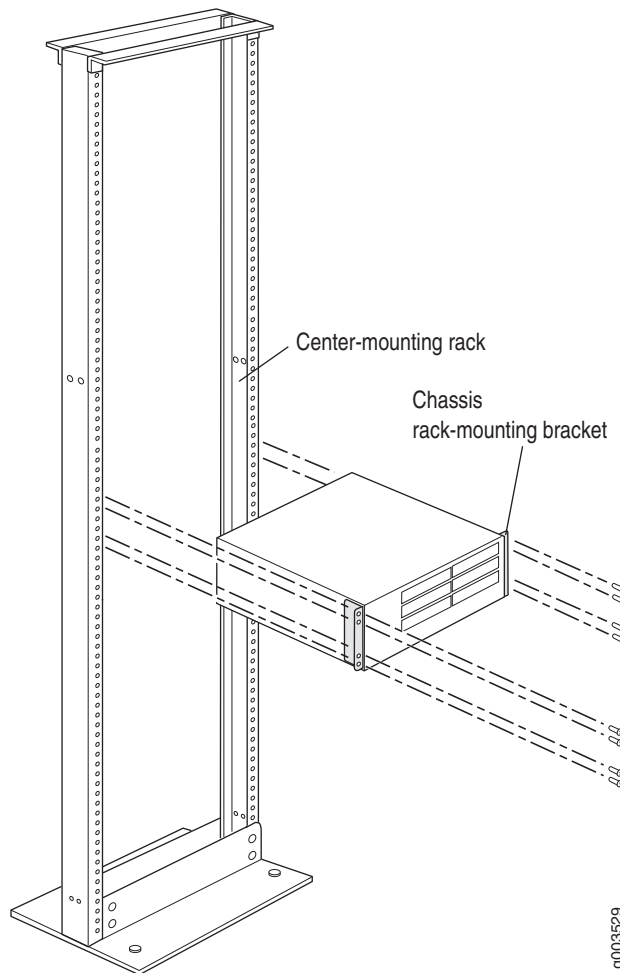
**NOTE:** If you are installing multiple routers in one rack, install the lowest one first and proceed upward in the rack.



**NOTE:** The chassis weighs between 18 lb (8.2 kg) and 24 lb (10.9 kg). Have one person lift the chassis into the rack and a second person secure the mounting screws.

To install the J4300 router or J6300 router into a rack:

1. Have one person grasp the sides of the router, lift the router, and position it in the rack.
2. Align the bottom hole in each mounting bracket with a hole in each rack rail as shown in Figure 42, making sure the chassis is level.
3. Have a second person install a mounting screw into each of the two aligned holes. Use a number 2 Phillips screwdriver to tighten the screws.
4. Install the remaining screws in each mounting bracket.
5. Verify that the mounting screws on one side of the rack are aligned with the mounting screws on the opposite side and that the router is level.

**Figure 42: Installing the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**

## Connecting Interface Cables to the Services Router

You connect the interfaces installed in the Services Router to various network media. For more information about the network interfaces supported on the router, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

1. Have ready a length of the type of cable used by the interface, as specified in “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.
2. Insert the cable connector into the cable connector port on the interface faceplate.
3. Arrange the cable as follows to prevent it from dislodging or developing stress points:

- a. Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
- b. Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
- c. Place fasteners on the loop to help maintain its shape.

## Chassis Grounding

---

To meet safety and electromagnetic interference (EMI) requirements and to ensure proper operation, the Services Router must be adequately grounded before power is connected. In addition to the grounding pin on the AC power plug cord, a threaded insert (PEM nut), screw, and washer are provided on the rear of the chassis to connect the router to earth ground.



**CAUTION:** Before router installation begins, a licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the grounding and power cables that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

---

The grounding cables must be 14 AWG single-strand wire cable, and must be able to handle the following amperage:

- J2300 router—up to 4 A
- J4300 router and J6300 router—up to 8 A

Each grounding lug must be a ring-type, vinyl-insulated TV14-6R lug, or equivalent, to accommodate the 14 AWG cable.

To ground the router before connecting power, you connect the grounding cable to earth ground and then attach the lug on the cable to the chassis grounding point, with the screw. (See “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.)

## Connecting Power to the Services Router

---

J2300 and J4300 Services Routers have a single fixed power supply. The J6300 Services Router has one or two field-replaceable power supplies. For more information about the J-series power specifications, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 85.



**WARNING:** DC-powered J2300 Services Routers are intended for installation in a dedicated equipment room where they are accessible by trained personnel only. DC-powered J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are intended for installation only in a restricted access location.

---

## Connecting AC Power

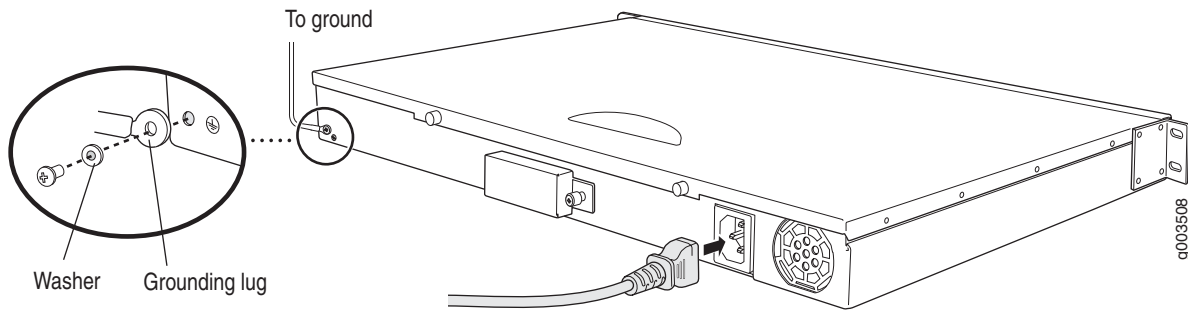
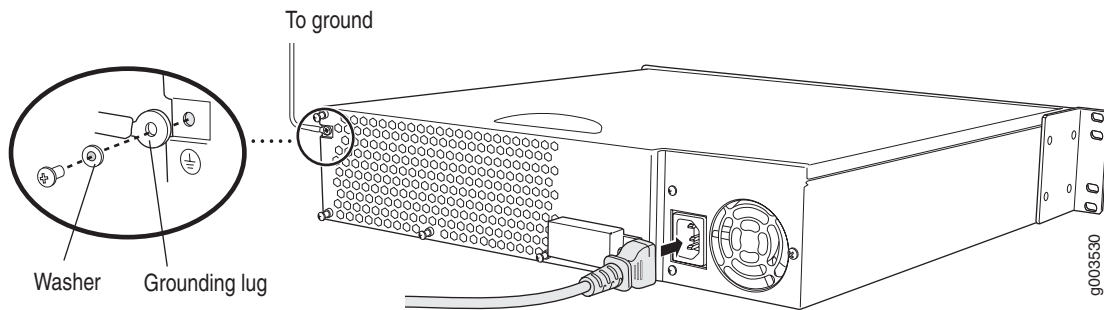
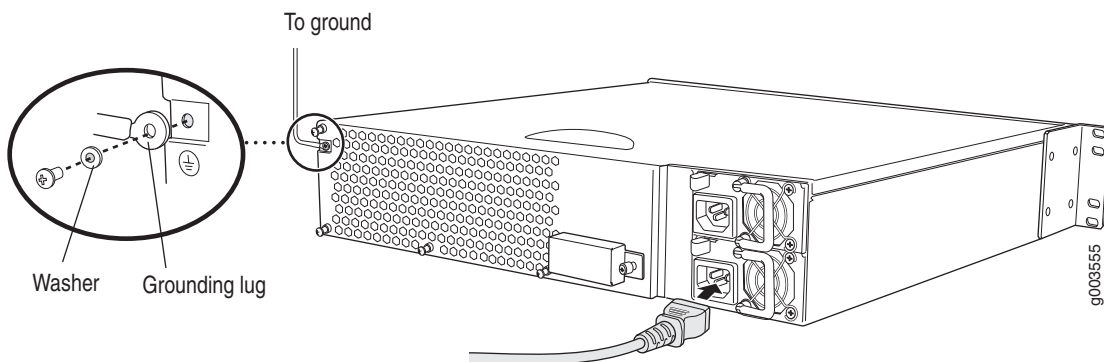
The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground. Additional grounding is provided to an AC-powered router when you plug its power supply into a grounded AC power receptacle.

The AC power cord shipped with the router connects the router to earth ground when plugged into an AC grounding-type power outlet. The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation.

To connect AC power to the router:

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist, and connect the strip to the ESD point on the chassis. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Use a grounding cable to connect the router to earth ground: (For cable requirements, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 99.)
  - a. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached an appropriate grounding cable lug to the grounding cable.
  - b. Connect one end of the grounding cable to a proper earth ground, such as the rack in which the router is installed.
  - c. With a Phillips screwdriver, remove the screw and washer from the PEM nut at the grounding point on the rear of the chassis.
  - d. Place the grounding lug at the other end of the cable over the grounding point, as shown in Figure 43, Figure 44, and Figure 45.
  - e. Secure the cable lug to the grounding point, first with the washer, then with the screw.
3. Locate the power cord or cords shipped with the router, which has a plug appropriate for your geographical location. For power cord specifications, see “Power Guidelines, Requirements, and Specifications” on page 85.
4. For each power supply:
  - a. Insert the appliance coupler end of a power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate, as shown in Figure 43, Figure 44, and Figure 45.
  - b. Insert the plug into an AC power source receptacle.
5. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people can trip on it.



**Figure 43: Connecting AC Power to the J2300 Services Router****Figure 44: Connecting AC Power to the J4300 Services Router****Figure 45: Connecting AC Power to the J6300 Services Router**

## Connecting DC Power



**CAUTION:** If your J6300 Services Router includes an optional redundant DC power supply, connect each of the two power supplies to different input power sources.

Failure to do so makes the router susceptible to total power failure if one of the power supplies fails.

---

The router must be connected to earth ground during normal operation. The protective earthing terminal on the rear of the chassis is provided to connect the router to ground.

To connect DC power to the router:

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist, and connect the strip to the ESD point on the chassis. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Use a grounding cable to connect the router to earth ground: (For cable requirements, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 99.)
  - a. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached an appropriate grounding cable lug to the grounding cable.
  - b. Connect one end of the grounding cable to a proper earth ground, such as the rack in which the router is installed.
  - c. With a Phillips screwdriver, remove the screw and washer from the PEM nut at the grounding point on the rear of the chassis.
  - d. Place the grounding lug at the other end of the cable over the grounding point, as shown in Figure 46, Figure 47, and Figure 48.
  - e. Secure the cable lug to the grounding point, first with the washer, then with the screw.



**NOTE:** A DC power supply in a Services Router becomes grounded when you connect a grounding cable between the router and earth ground.

---

3. For each power supply: (For cable requirements, see “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 88.)
  - a. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.

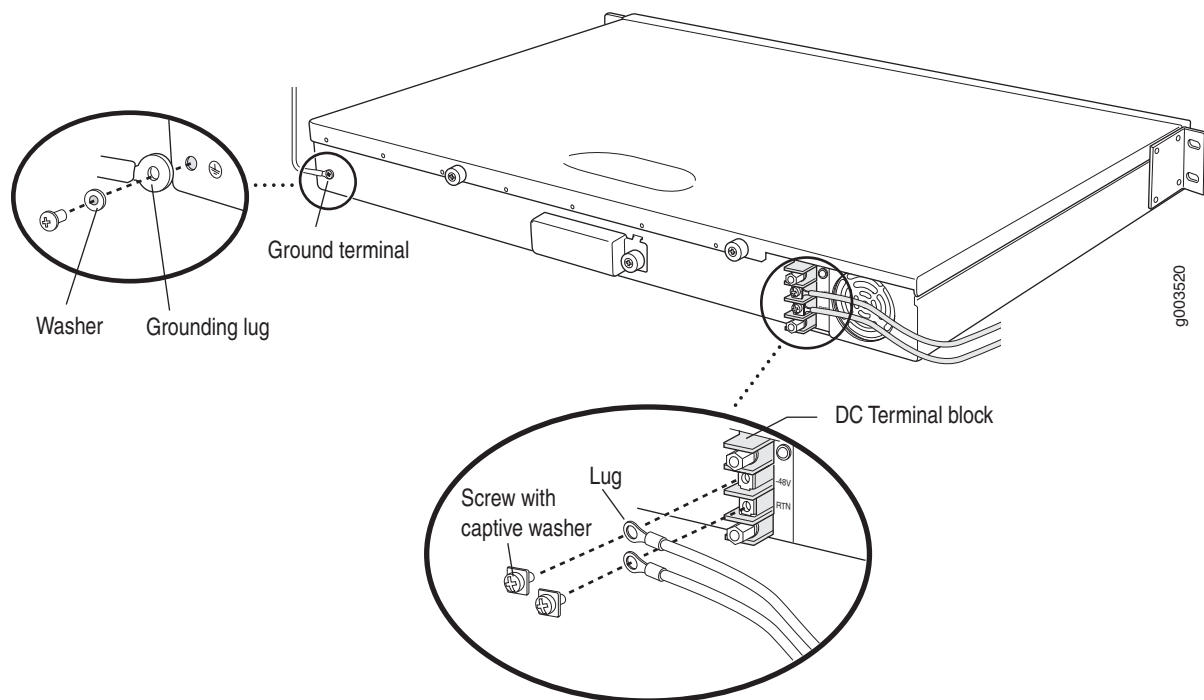


**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.

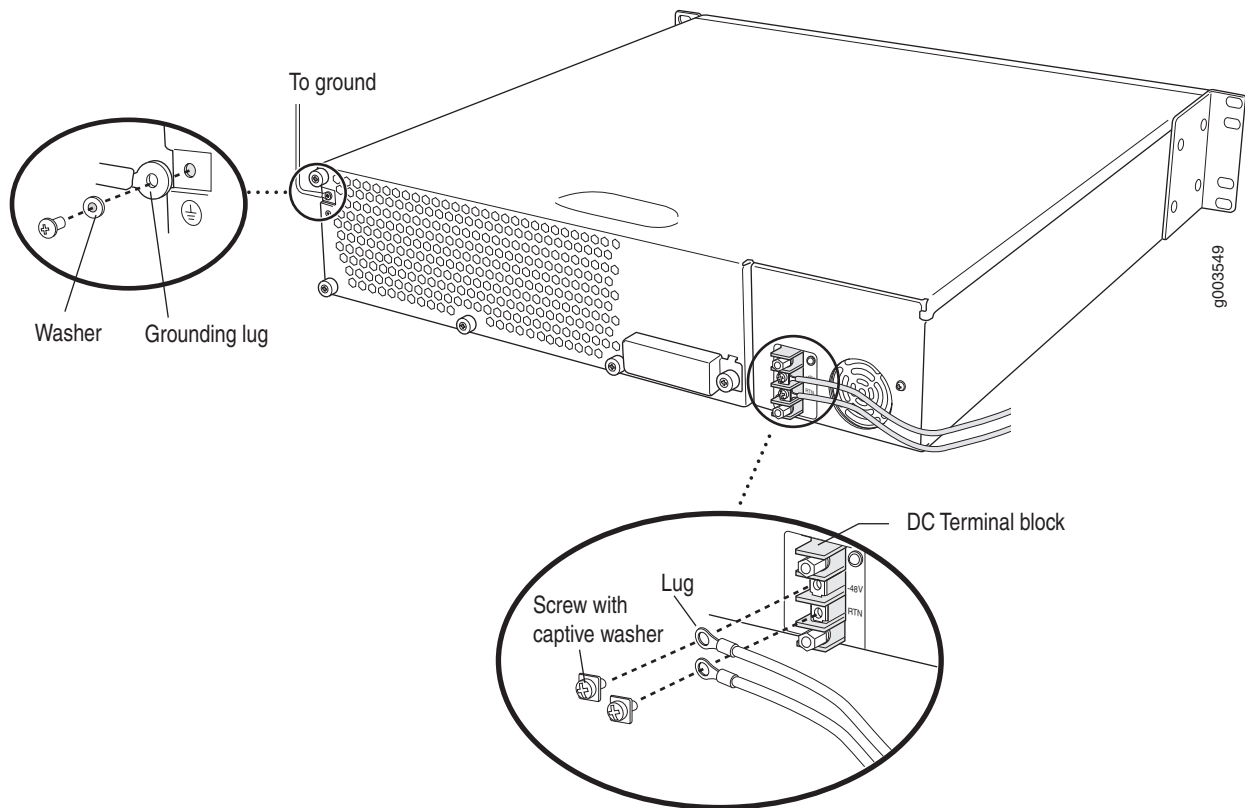
---

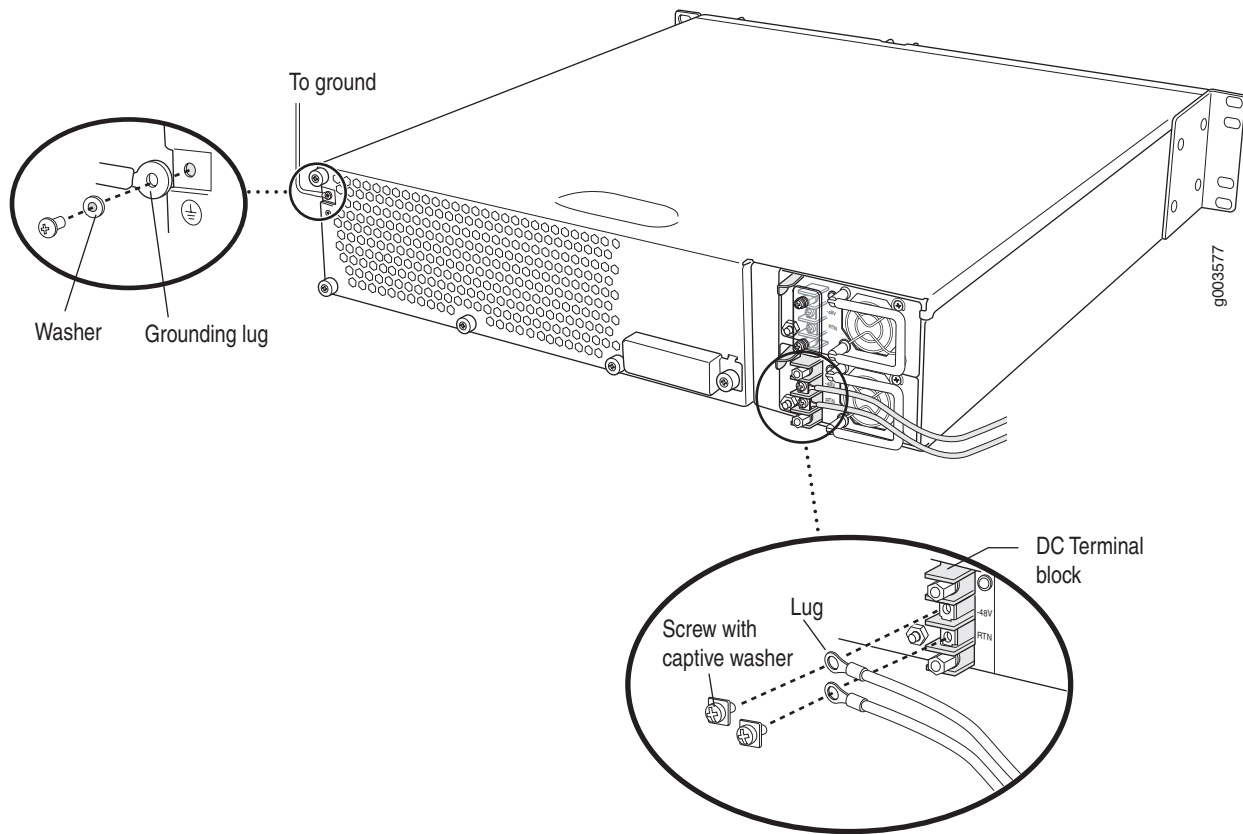
- b. Verify that a licensed electrician has attached the appropriate power cable lugs to the negative and positive DC source power cables.
  - c. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
  - d. Within the terminal block, remove the two center screws next to the labels **-48 VDC** and **RTN**.  
  
Each screw contains a captive washer used to secure a DC source power cable lug to the terminal block.
  - e. Using one of the removed screws, secure the positive (+) DC source power cable lug to the **RTN** terminal.
  - f. Using the other removed screw, secure the negative (-) DC source power cable lug to the **-48 VDC** terminal.
  - g. Dress the power cables appropriately.
  - h. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
4. Verify that the power cables do not block access to router components or drape where people can trip on them.

**Figure 46: Connecting DC Power to the J2300 Services Router**



**Figure 47: Connecting DC Power to the J4300 Services Router**



**Figure 48: Connecting DC Power to the J6300 Services Router**

## Powering a Services Router On and Off

To power on a Services Router, press the power button. The Routing Engine boots as the power supply completes its startup sequence. The **POWER ON** LED lights during startup and remains on steadily when the router is operating normally.

To power off a Services Router, do one of the following:

- Graceful shutdown—Press and release the power button. The router begins gracefully shutting down the operating system and then powers itself off.
- Immediate shutdown—Press the power button and hold it for more than 5 seconds. The router immediately powers itself off without shutting down the operating system.

To remove power completely from the router, unplug the AC power cord or switch off the DC power source. The power button on the Services Router is a standby power switch. If the router is connected to a power source when you press the power button to power the router off, the router remains in standby mode and a small amount (5 V and 3.3 V) of standby voltage is still available in the chassis.



## Chapter 7

# Establishing Basic Connectivity

The JUNOS software is preinstalled on the Services Router. When the router is powered on, it is ready to be configured. If the router does not have a configuration from the factory or your service provider, you must configure the software to establish basic connectivity.

If you are setting up a Services Router for the first time, you can use either J-Web Quick Configuration or a configuration editor to configure basic connectivity. For a brief explanation of J-Web Quick Configuration and the J-Web and CLI configuration editors, see “Services Router User Interface Overview” on page 61.

If you are setting up many Services Routers, autoinstallation can help automate the configuration process. For more information about autoinstallation, see “Configuring Autoinstallation” on page 129.

This chapter contains the following topics. For more information about basic connectivity, see the *JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide*.

- Basic Connectivity Terms on page 107
- Basic Connectivity Overview on page 108
- Before You Begin on page 113
- Configuring the Services Router with J-Web Quick Configuration on page 114
- Configuring the Services Router with a Configuration Editor on page 120
- Verifying Basic Connectivity on page 127

### Basic Connectivity Terms

---

Before configuring basic connectivity, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 45.

**Table 45: Basic Connectivity Terms**

<b>Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
domain name	Name that identifies the network or subnetwork of a router.
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	Protocol for assigning dynamic IP addresses to devices on a network.
gateway	Packets destined for IP addresses not identified in the routing table are sent to the default gateway.
hostname	Unique name that identifies a router on the network.
loopback address	IP address of a Services Router on logical interface lo0.0 that is always active and available to external hosts and as the source address for outgoing packets.
Network Time Protocol (NTP)	Protocol that provides a reliable way of synchronizing the system time of a router.
root user	A superuser or system administrator who can perform any task in the file system.
secure shell (SSH)	Protocol that provides a secured method of logging in to a remote network system.
Secure Sockets Layer Protocol (SSL)	Protocol that securely encrypts security information using public-private key technology, which requires a paired private key and authentication certificate, before transmitting data across a network.
telnet	Software that allows a computer to act as a remote terminal on a network system.

## Basic Connectivity Overview

To connect your Services Router to the network and establish basic connectivity, you enter information about your network. This overview contains the following topics:

- Router Identification on page 109
- Root Password on page 109
- Time Zone and System Time on page 109
- Network Settings on page 109
- Default Gateway on page 110
- Backup Router on page 110
- Loopback Address on page 110
- Management Interface Address on page 111
- Management Access on page 112



- Secure Access on page 112

## **Router Identification**

The domain name defines the network or subnetwork that the Services Router belongs to. The hostname refers to the specific machine, while the domain name is shared among all the devices in a given network. Together the hostname and domain name identify the router in the network.

## **Root Password**

The root user has complete privileges to configure the Services Router, and manage files in the router's file system. Initially, the root password is not defined on the router. To ensure basic security, you must define the root password during initial configuration. If you use a plain-text password, the router displays the password as an encrypted string so that users viewing the configuration cannot easily see the password.

The root password must meet the following conditions:

- The password must be at least 6 characters long.
- You can include most character classes in a password (alphabetic, numeric, and special characters), except control characters.
- Valid passwords must contain at least one change of case or character class.

## **Time Zone and System Time**

You define the time zone for the location where you plan to operate the Services Router by using a designation that consists of the following information for the location:

- Name of the continent or ocean—For example, America or Atlantic
- Name of the major city or other geographic feature in the time zone—For example, Detroit or Azores

A Network Time Protocol (NTP) server provides accurate time across a network. The router synchronizes the system time with the NTP server, and periodically accesses the NTP server to maintain the correct time.

The time zone and system time must be accurate so that the router schedules events and operations as expected.

## **Network Settings**

A Domain Name System (DNS) server on the network maintains a database for resolving hostnames and IP addresses. Network devices can query the DNS server

by hostnames rather than IP addresses. The router accesses the DNS servers that are added to the configuration to resolve hostnames in the order in which you list them.

If you plan to include your router in several domains, you can add these domains to the configuration so that they are included in a DNS search. When DNS searches are requested, the domain suffixes are appended to the hostnames.

## Default Gateway

A default gateway is a static route that is used to direct packets addressed to networks not explicitly listed in the routing table. If a packet arrives at the Services Router with an address that the router does not have routing information for, the router sends the packet to the default gateway. The default gateway entry is always present in the routing and forwarding tables.

## Backup Router

You can specify a backup router to take over when the routing protocol process of the Services Router is not running, usually when the Services Router is booting, or if its routing protocol process has failed. Packets arriving at a Services Router in this situation are routed to the backup router. When the routing protocol process starts up again, the address of the backup router is removed from the routing and forwarding tables of the Services Router. The backup router must be located on the same subnet.



**NOTE:** To configure a backup router, you must use the CLI or J-Web configuration editor. You cannot configure a backup router with J-Web Quick Configuration.

---

## Loopback Address

The loopback address is the IP address of the Services Router. The loopback address ensures that the Services Router provides an IP address to management applications. Because it must always be available to hosts attempting to route packets to the Services Router, the loopback address resides on an interface that is always active, known as the loopback interface (lo0.0). Setting a loopback address ensures that the Services Router can receive packets addressed to the loopback address as long as the router is reachable through any entry (ingress) interface. In addition, applications such as NTP, RADIUS, and TACACS+ can use the loopback address as the source address for outgoing packets.

If you use the J-Web Set Up Quick Configuration page, you can either set a loopback address of your choice or have the loopback address automatically set to 127.0.0.1 when you click **Apply** or **OK** to commit the configuration.

## Management Interface Address

The Fast Ethernet interface `fe-0/0/0`, labeled **PORT 0** on the front panel of the Services Router, is the network interface through which you perform initial router setup. After the router is initially configured, you can attach `fe-0/0/0` to the management network for use as a management interface.

### Before Initial Configuration

Before initial configuration, when the factory default configuration is active:

1. The Services Router attempts to perform autoinstallation by obtaining a router configuration through all its connected interfaces, including `fe-0/0/0`. The Services Router acts as a DHCP client out the `fe-0/0/0` interface.
2. If the Services Router does not find a DHCP server within a few seconds, it sets the address of `fe-0/0/0` to `192.168.1.1/24` and becomes a DHCP server out the `fe-0/0/0` interface.

With the router temporarily acting as a DHCP server, you can manually configure it with the J-Web interface. Any DHCP client host, for example, a PC or laptop computer, directly connected to `fe-0/0/0` receives an address on the `192.168.1.1/24` network.



**NOTE:** The DHCP functionality for initial setup is different from the configurable DHCP server functionality of the Services Router during operation. To configure the Services Router as a DHCP server, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

---

### During Initial Configuration

Once you connect your laptop or PC to `fe-0/0/0`, you can use a Web browser to visit the address `192.168.1.1/24`, access the J-Web Set Up Quick Configuration page, and initially configure the router.

### After Initial Configuration

After you perform the initial configuration and commit it by clicking **Apply** or **OK** on the Set Up page, the configured router can no longer act as a DHCP server. You can do either of the following:

- Continue to use the J-Web Quick Configuration and leave the IP address and prefix length as `192.168.1.1/24`. You can continue configuring the router until

the DHCP lease expires, or the physical connection is lost because the cable is disconnected or the router is rebooted.

- Change the IP address and prefix length. You lose access to the router until you either adjust the IP address of the management device to be on the same subnet as the router, or connect to the router through the console port.

## Management Access

Telnet allows you to connect to the Services Router and access the CLI to execute commands from a remote system. Telnet connections are not encrypted and therefore can be intercepted.

Telnet access to the root user is prohibited. You must use more secure methods, such as SSH, to log in as **root**.

If you are using a JUNOScript server to configure and monitor routers, you can activate clear-text access on the router to allow unencrypted text to be sent directly over a TCP connection without using any additional protocol (such as SSH, SSL, or telnet). Information sent in clear-text is not encrypted and therefore can be intercepted. For more information about the JUNOScript application programming interface (API), see the *JUNOScript API Guide*.

SSH also allows you to connect to the router and access the CLI to execute commands from a remote system. However, unlike telnet, SSH encrypts the password so that it cannot be intercepted.

SSH connections are authenticated by a digital certificate. SSH uses public-private key technology for both connection and authentication. The SSH client software must be installed on the machine where the client application runs. If the SSH private key is encrypted (for greater security), the SSH client must be able to access the passphrase used to decrypt the key.

For information about obtaining SSH software, see <http://www.ssh.com> and <http://www.openssh.com>.

## Secure Access

HTTPS access allows secure management of the Services Router through the Web interface. Communication between the router and your Web browser is encrypted with a session key negotiated by the SSL server certificate.

The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol uses public-private key technology that requires a paired private key and authentication certificate SSL service. You must first obtain a digital certificate from a trusted signing authority, and then enable HTTPS access on the Services Router.

## Before You Begin

---

Before you begin initial configuration, complete the following tasks:

- Install the Services Router in its permanent location, as described in “Installing and Connecting a Services Router” on page 91.
- Gather the following information:
  - Hostname for the router on the network
  - Domain that the router belongs to on the network
  - Password for the root user
  - Time zone where the router is located
  - IP address of an NTP server (if NTP is used to set the time on the router)
  - IP address of a DNS server
  - List of domains that can be appended to hostnames for DNS resolution
  - IP address of the default gateway
  - IP address to be used for the loopback interface
  - IP address of the fe-0/0/0 interface
- If you are performing the initial configuration with the J-Web interface, collect the following equipment:
  - A management device, such as a laptop, with an Ethernet port
  - An Ethernet cable
- If you are performing the initial configuration with the CLI, collect the following equipment:
  - A management device, such as a PC or laptop, with a serial port and an asynchronous terminal application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal)
  - An RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter (provided)
  - A rollover Ethernet cable (provided)
- If you are using SSL for secure access to the Services Router, obtain a digital certificate from a trusted signing authority.

## Configuring the Services Router with J-Web Quick Configuration

---

If you plan to use the J-Web interface to configure the Services Router, you must connect through LAN PORT 0, as shown in Figure 49 and Figure 50.

Before you configure the router, gather the information described in “Before You Begin” on page 113.

To configure the router with J-Web Quick Configuration, perform the following procedures:

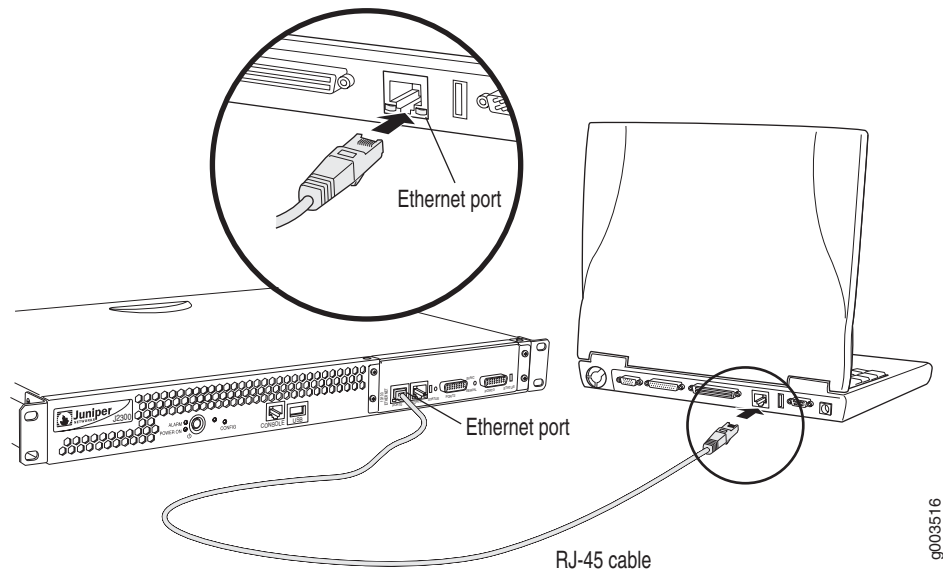
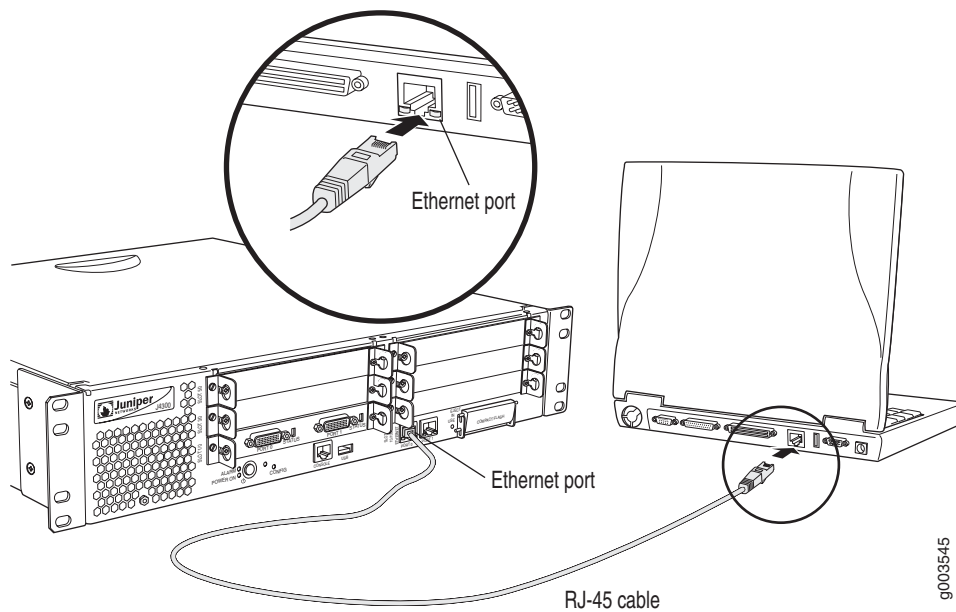
- Connecting to the J-Web Interface on page 114
- Configuring Basic Settings with Quick Configuration on page 115
- Configuring Secure Web Access with Quick Configuration on page 118

### Connecting to the J-Web Interface

When the Services Router is powered on for the first time, if no configuration is present, the fe-0/0/0 interface on LAN PORT 0 acts as a DHCP server and assigns an IP address within the 192.168.1/24 subnetwork to any devices connected to it.

To connect to the J-Web interface using LAN PORT 0 on the router (see Figure 49 and Figure 50):

1. On the management device, such as a PC or laptop, you use to access the J-Web interface, verify that the address of the port that you connect to the router is set to one of the following:
  - An Ethernet address other than 192.168.1.1 on the 192.168.1/24 subnetwork
  - An Ethernet address from a DHCP server
2. Turn off the power to the management device.
3. Plug one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the management device.
4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to LAN PORT 0 on the router.
5. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel. Verify that the POWER ON LED on the front panel turns green.
6. Turn on the power to the management device. The router assigns an IP address to the management device within the 192.168.1/24 subnetwork if the device is configured to use DHCP.
7. From the management device, open a Web browser and enter the IP address 192.168.1.1 in the address field. The Set Up Quick Configuration page appears.

**Figure 49: Connecting to the Fast Ethernet Port on the J2300 Services Router****Figure 50: Connecting to the Fast Ethernet Port on the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**

### **Configuring Basic Settings with Quick Configuration**

J-Web Quick Configuration allows you to configure basic settings. Figure 35 shows the Quick Configuration page for basic setup. To configure basic settings with J-Web Quick Configuration:

1. Enter information into the fields described in Table 46 on the Set Up Quick Configuration page.
2. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay in the Set Up Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **Cancel**.



**NOTE:** Once initial configuration is complete, the Services Router stops functioning as a DHCP server. If you change the IP address of `fe-0/0/0` and have the management device configured to use DHCP, you lose your DHCP lease and your connection to the router through the J-Web interface. To reestablish a connection, either set the IP address on the management device manually, or connect `fe-0/0/0` to the management network and access the router another way—for example, through the console port.

3. To check the configuration, see “Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations” on page 127.

**Table 46: Set Up Quick Configuration Summary**

Field	Function	Your Action
<b>Identification</b>		
Host Name (required)	Defines the hostname of the router.	Type the hostname.
Domain Name	Defines the network or subnetwork that the machine belongs to.	Type the domain name.
Root Password (required)	Sets the root password that user “root” can use to log in to the router.	Type a plain-text password that the system encrypts.  <b>NOTE:</b> After a root password has been defined, it is required when you log in to the J-Web user interface or the CLI.
Verify Root Password (required)	Verifies the root password has been typed correctly.	Retype the password.
<b>Time</b>		
Time Zone	Identifies the time zone that the router is located in.	From the list, select the appropriate time zone.



**Table 46: Set Up Quick Configuration Summary (continued)**

Field	Function	Your Action
NTP Servers	Specify an NTP server that the router can reach to synchronize the system time.	<p>To add an IP address, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To delete an IP address, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
Current System Time	Synchronizes the system time with the NTP server, or manually set the system time and date.	<p>■ To immediately set the time using the NTP server, click <b>Set Time via NTP</b>. The router sends a request to the NTP server and synchronizes the system time.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you are configuring other settings on this page, the router also synchronizes the system time using the NTP server when you click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>■ To set the time manually, click <b>Set Time Manually</b>. A pop-up window allows you to select the current date and time from lists.</p>
<b>Network</b>		
DNS Name Servers	Specify a DNS server that the router can use to resolve hostnames into addresses.	<p>To add an IP address, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To delete an IP address, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
Domain Search	Adds each domain name that the router is included in to the configuration so that they are included in a DNS search.	<p>To add a domain name, type it in the box to the left of the Add button, then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <p>To delete a domain name, click on it in the box above the Add button, then click <b>Delete</b>.</p>
Default Gateway	Defines a default gateway through which to direct packets addressed to networks not explicitly listed in the routing table.	Type a 32-bit IP address, in dotted decimal notation.
Loopback Address	Defines a reserved IP address that is always available on the router. If no address is entered, this address is set to 127.0.0.1/32.	Type a 32-bit IP address and prefix length, in dotted decimal notation.

**Table 46: Set Up Quick Configuration Summary (continued)**

Field	Function	Your Action
fe-0/0/0 Address	Defines the IP address and prefix length of <b>fe-0/0/0</b> . The interface <b>fe-0/0/0</b> is typically used as the management interface for accessing the router. By default this address is set to 192.168.1.1/24.	Type a 32-bit IP address and prefix length, in dotted decimal notation.  <b>NOTE:</b> If you change the <b>fe-0/0/0</b> address, you will lose your connection to the J-Web interface when you click <b>Apply</b> or <b>OK</b> . If you need to change this address but want to continue using the J-Web interface after applying the initial configuration, set the IP address on the management device manually.
<b>Management Access</b>		
Allow Telnet Access	Allows remote access to the router using telnet.	To enable telnet access, select the check box.
Allow JUNOScript over Clear-Text Access	Allows JUNOScript to access the router using a protocol for sending unencrypted text over a TCP connection.	To enable JUNOScript access over clear-text, select the check box.
Allow SSH Access	Allows remote access to the router using SSH.	To enable SSH access, select the check box.

## Configuring Secure Web Access with Quick Configuration

The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol uses public-private key technology that requires a paired private key and authentication certificate SSL service. To use SSL, you must import the SSL certificate into the Services Router and then configure secure HTTPS Web access to the Services Router.

When you enable HTTPS access on the Services Router, you must use `https:// URL` or `https:// ip address`.

Figure 51 shows the Secure Access Quick Configuration page.

**Figure 51: Quick Configuration Secure Access Page**

Juniper NETWORKS **ROUTER - J2300** Logged in as: **regress**  
[Help](#) [About](#) [Logout](#)

**Monitor Configuration Diagnose Manage Alarms**

**Quick Configuration**

Set Up

**Secure Access**

Interfaces

Users

SNMP

Routing

Firewall/NAT

DHCP

IPSec Tunnels

Realtime Performance Monitoring

► **View and Edit**

► **History**

► **Rescue**

[Configuration](#)

### Quick Configuration

### Secure Access

---

#### Certificates

Local certificates are used in providing SSL server access.

No certificates are defined.

[Add...](#)

---

#### HTTP Web Access

HTTP access allows management of the router via the web interface. Co web server and your browser is sent in the clear (including passwords!), do disallow HTTP access from your WAN interfaces.

**Enable HTTP access** ☒ ?

**Enable HTTP on All Interfaces** ☒

**HTTP Interfaces**

--	--

→

To configure SSL settings in the J-Web interface:

1. Enter information into the fields described in Table 47 on the Secure Access Quick Configuration page.
2. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the Quick Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

3. To check the configuration, see “Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations” on page 127.



**NOTE:** You must obtain a certificate from a trusted signing authority before performing this task.

**Table 47: SSL Quick Configuration Summary**

Field	Function	Your Action
Certificates	Displays digital certificates required for SSL access to the Services Router.	Click <b>Add</b> and type the certificate name in the Certificate Name box. Paste the text of your certificate in the Certificate box. Click <b>OK</b> .
HTTPS Web Access	Allows secure management of the Services Router by encrypting communication between the router and the Web browser.	To enable secure Web access, select <b>Enable HTTPS access</b> and then select the certificate from the HTTPS Certificate list.

## Configuring the Services Router with a Configuration Editor

If you plan to use the CLI to configure the router, you must connect through the console port, as shown in Figure 52 and Figure 53.

You can configure basic settings in the J-Web interface from a device attached to the fe-0/0/0 on LAN PORT 0. For instructions, see “Connecting to the J-Web Interface” on page 114.

Before you configure the router, gather the information described in “Before You Begin” on page 113

This section contains the following topics:

- Connecting to the CLI on page 120
- Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor on page 122

### Connecting to the CLI

To connect to the CLI using the console port on the router:

1. Turn off the power to the management device, such as a PC or laptop computer, that you are using to access the CLI.
2. Plug one end of an Ethernet rollover cable into the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter (see Figure 52 and Figure 53).



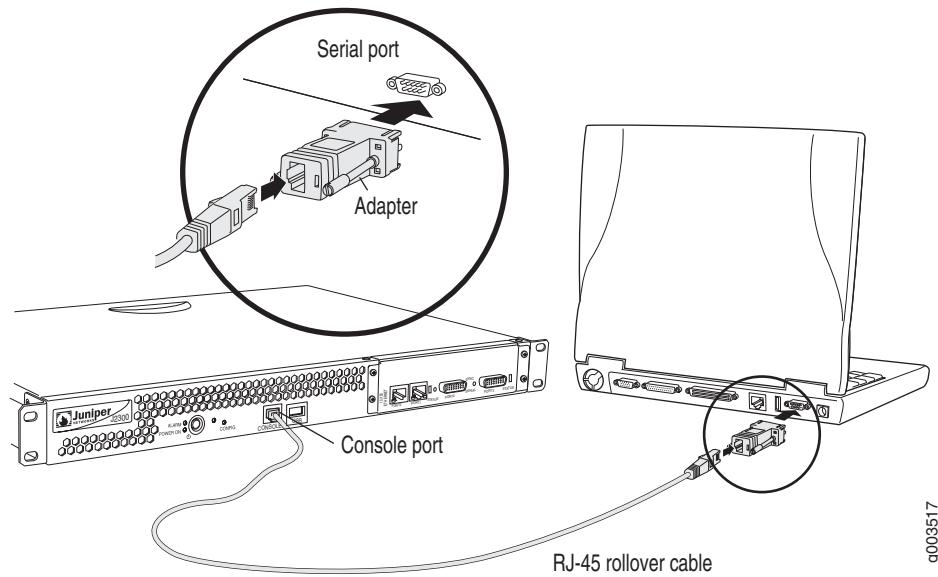
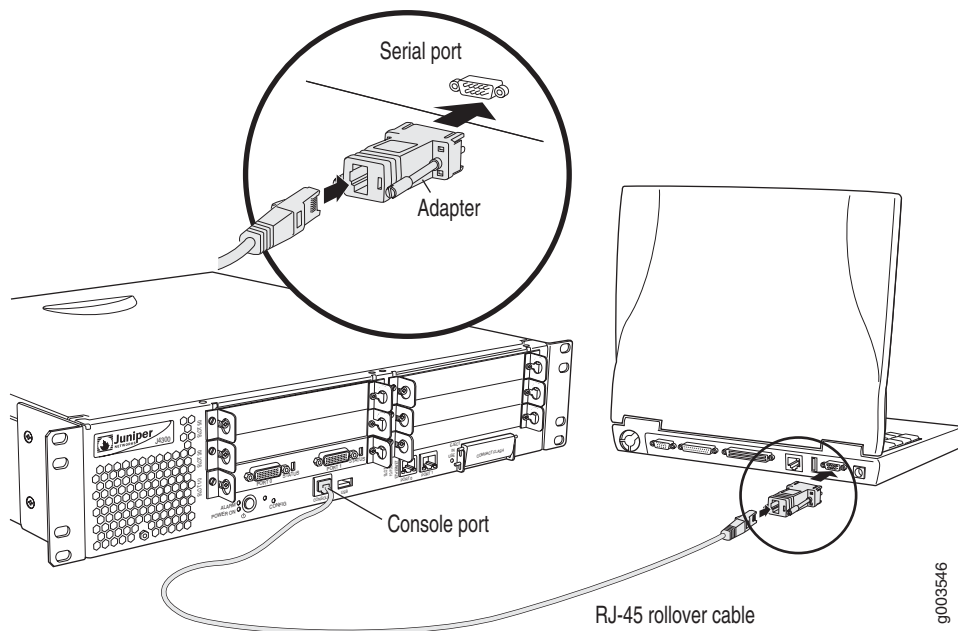
**NOTE:** The Ethernet rollover cable and RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter are provided in the router's accessory box.

---

3. Plug the RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter into the serial port on the management device (see Figure 52 and Figure 53).
4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet rollover cable to the console port on the router (see Figure 52 and Figure 53).
5. Turn on the power to the management device.
6. Start your asynchronous terminal emulation application (such as Microsoft Windows Hyperterminal) and select the appropriate COM port to use (for example, COM1).
7. Configure the port settings as follows:
  - Bits per second: 9600
  - Data bits: 8
  - Parity: None
  - Stop bits: 1
  - Flow control: None
8. Power on the router by pressing the power button on the front panel. Verify that the **POWER ON LED** on the front panel turns green.

The terminal emulation screen on your management device displays the boot sequence. When the router has finished booting, a login prompt appears.

9. Log in as the user "root". There is no password.

**Figure 52: Connecting to the Console Port on the J2300 Services Router****Figure 53: Connecting to the Console Port on the J4300 or J6300 Services Router**

## Configuring Basic Settings with a Configuration Editor

To establish basic connectivity on a Services Router, you identify the router, connect the router to the network, and specify basic network settings.

In a typical network, the Services Router has the basic settings listed in Table 48. Determine the values to set on the Services Router in your network.

**Table 48: Sample Settings on a Services Router**

<b>Services Router Property</b>	<b>Sample Value</b>
Services Router hostname	routera
Access for user “root”	SSH RSA public key
IP address of the NTP server used to synchronize system time on the Services Router	10.148.2.21
Services Router location	Sunnyvale, California, USA, which is in the America/Los_Angeles time zone
IP address of the DNS server to which DNS requests are sent	10.148.2.32
Domains to which the Services Router belongs	lab.router.net and router.net
IP address of a backup router to use while the Services Router is booting or if the routing protocol processes fail to start	192.168.2.44
Loopback IP address and prefix length for the Services Router lo0 interface	172.16.1.24/32
IP address and prefix length for the Services Router fe-0/0/0 interface	192.168.2.24/24

To use a configuration editor to configure basic settings:

1. Navigate to the top of the configuration hierarchy in either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.
2. To configure basic settings, perform the configuration tasks described in Table 49.
3. If you are using the J-Web interface, click **Commit** to view a summary of your changes, then click **OK** to commit the configuration. If you are using the CLI, commit the configuration by entering the `commit` command.
4. To check the configuration, see “Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations” on page 127.

**Table 49: Configuring Basic Settings**

<b>Task</b>	<b>J-Web Configuration Editor</b>	<b>CLI Configuration Editor</b>
Navigate to the <b>System</b> level in the configuration hierarchy.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Configuration &gt; View and Edit &gt; Edit Configuration</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to System, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> </ol>	From the top of the configuration hierarchy, enter <b>edit system</b> .
Define the hostname of the router.	In the Host name box, type the hostname of the router—for example, <b>routera</b> .	Set the hostname. For example: <b>set host-name routera</b>
Name the domain in which the router is located.	In the Domain name box, type the domain name of the router—for example, <b>lab.router.net</b> .	Set the domain name. For example: <b>set domain-name lab.router.net</b>
Allow SSH remote access.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Services, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Ssh, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	Set remote access for SSH: <b>set services ssh</b>
Define root authentication for access to the router. <b>NOTE:</b> For readability, the entire key is not shown.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Root authentication, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Ssh rsa, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Authorized key box, type the RSA password—for example, <b>ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac== root@routera.lab.router.net</b></li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	Set the root password. For example: <b>set root-authentication ssh-rsa "ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac== root@routera.lab.router.net"</b>
Define the time zone the router is located in.	In the Time zone list, select the time zone for your router—for example, <b>America/Los_Angeles</b> .	Set the time zone. For example: <b>set time-zone America/Los_Angeles</b>



**Table 49: Configuring Basic Settings (continued)**

<b>Task</b>	<b>J-Web Configuration Editor</b>	<b>CLI Configuration Editor</b>
Define the NTP server that NTP requests can be sent to.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Nested configuration section, next to Ntp, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. Next to Server, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Address box, type the NTP server's IP address—for example, <b>10.148.2.21</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>5. Click <b>OK</b> a second time to return to the System level in the configuration editor hierarchy.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the address of the NTP server. For example:</p> <pre>set ntp server 10.148.2.21</pre>
Define the DNS server that receives DNS requests.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Next to Name server, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Address box, type the address of the DNS server—for example, <b>10.148.2.32</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the address of the DNS server. For example:</p> <pre>set name-server 10.148.2.32</pre>
Add each domain that the router belongs to.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Next to Domain search, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Value box, type the name of the domain in which the router is located—for example, <b>lab.router.net</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>4. Next to Domain search, click <b>Add New Entry</b>.</li> <li>5. In the Value box, type the name of another domain that the router belongs to—for example, <b>router.net</b>.</li> <li>6. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<p>Set the domains to be searched. For example:</p> <pre>set domain-search lab.router.net set domain-search router.net</pre>
Define the backup router to be used when the router is booting or the routing protocol processes are not running.	<p>In the Backup router section, next to Address, type the IP address of the backup router—for example, <b>192.168.2.44</b>.</p>	<p>Set the address for the backup router. For example:</p> <pre>set backup router address 192.168.2.44</pre>

**Table 49: Configuring Basic Settings (continued)**

<b>Task</b>	<b>J-Web Configuration Editor</b>	<b>CLI Configuration Editor</b>
Define the IP address for lo0.0.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the configuration editor hierarchy, next to Interfaces, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Interface table, locate the lo0 row and click <b>Unit</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Unit table, click <b>0</b>, and in the Family section next to Inet, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>4. To delete the existing IP address, click the <b>Discard</b> button. Select the <b>Delete Configuration Below This Point</b> radio button from the next display.</li> <li>5. Next to Address, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>6. In the Source box, type the address and prefix length for the loopback interface—for example, 172.16.1.24/32.</li> <li>7. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Exit the <b>system</b> level of the hierarchy:  exit</li> <li>2. From the top of the configuration hierarchy, enter <b>edit interfaces</b>.</li> <li>3. Delete the existing IP address:  delete lo0 unit 0 family inet address.</li> <li>4. Set the IP address and prefix length of lo0.0. For example:  set lo0 unit 0 family inet address 172.16.1.24/32.</li> </ol>
Define the IP address for fe-0/0/0.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the configuration editor hierarchy, next to Interfaces, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>2. In the Interface table, locate the fe-0/0/0 row and click <b>Unit</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Unit table, click <b>0</b>, and in the Family section next to Inet, click <b>Configure</b> or <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>4. To delete the existing IP address, click the <b>Discard</b> button. Select the <b>Delete Configuration Below This Point</b> radio button from the next display.</li> <li>5. Next to Address, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>6. In the Source box, type the address and prefix length for the management interface—for example, 192.168.1.1/24.</li> <li>7. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Delete the existing IP address:  delete fe-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address.</li> <li>2. Set the IP address and prefix length of fe-0/0/0. For example:  set fe-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.168.1.1/24</li> </ol>

## Verifying Basic Connectivity

---

To verify that the Services Router has the settings you configured, perform the following task.

### Displaying Basic Connectivity Configurations

**Purpose** Verify the configuration of basic connectivity. Because the basic connectivity settings appear in different places in the configuration hierarchy, displaying the entire configuration at once makes viewing the settings easier.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > View Configuration Text**. Alternatively, from configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show` command. The following sample output displays the sample values configured in Table 49. Your output displays the values you set.

**Sample Output**

```
system {
  host-name routera;
  domain-name lab.router.net;
  domain-search [ lab.router.net router.net ];
  backup-router 192.168.2.44;
  time-zone America/Los_Angeles;
  root-authentication {
    ssh-rsa "ssh-rsa AAAAB3Nza...D9Y2gXF9ac==root@routera.lab.router.net";
  }
  name-server {
    10.148.2.32;
  }
  services {
  }
  ntp {
    server 10.148.2.21;
  }
}
interfaces {
  fe-0/0/0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 192.168.1.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
  lo0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 172.16.1.24/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

**What It Means** The output shows the configuration of basic connectivity. Verify that the values displayed are correct for your Services Router. For more information about the format of a configuration file, see the *J-series Services Router Basic LAN and WAN Access Configuration Guide*.

## Chapter 8

# Configuring Autoinstallation

If you are setting up many J-series Services Routers, autoinstallation can help automate the configuration process. You can use either the J-Web configuration editor or CLI configuration editor to configure autoinstallation. The J-Web interface does not include Quick Configuration pages for autoinstallation.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Autoinstallation Terms on page 129
- Autoinstallation Overview on page 130
- Before You Begin on page 131
- Configuring Autoinstallation with a Configuration Editor on page 132
- Verifying Autoinstallation on page 133

## Autoinstallation Terms

Before configuring autoinstallation, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 50.

**Table 50: Autoinstallation Terms**

Term	Definition
autoinstallation	Automatic configuration of a Services Router when it is powered on without a valid configuration file or is configured specifically for autoinstallation. Autoinstallation is useful when deploying multiple Services Routers.
default configuration	Configuration state when a boot file cannot be located during autoinstallation.
host-specific configuration	Configuration state when a specific filename is used during TFTP server requests.

## Autoinstallation Overview

---

Autoinstallation provides automatic configuration when a new Services Router is powered on without a configuration file or for a Services Router configured for autoinstallation. The autoinstallation process begins anytime a Services Router is powered on and a valid configuration file is not found in the nonvolatile RAM (NVRAM). Typically, a configuration file is unavailable when a Services Router is powered on for the first time, or if the configuration file is deleted from the NVRAM. The autoinstallation features is useful deploying multiple Services Router in networks.

This overview contains the following topics:

- Autoinstallation Interfaces on page 130
- Autoinstallation Process on Services Router on page 130
- Automatic Configuration of a New Services Router on page 131

### Autoinstallation Interfaces

Autoinstallation can take place through either a Fast Ethernet LAN interface or a serial interface on the Services Router. If a LAN interface with High-level Data Link Control (HDLC) encapsulation is found on the Services Router, autoinstallation attempts to obtain an IP address using DHCP requests, bootstrap protocol (BOOTP), or Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) requests.

If a serial interface with Frame Relay encapsulation is connected, then the Services Router attempts to obtain an IP address using BOOTP requests. On a serial interface without Frame Relay encapsulation, the Services Router uses Serial Line Address Request Protocol (SLARP).

### Autoinstallation Process on Services Router

When the Services Router is powered on for the first time, autoinstallation attempts the following on each connected interface simultaneously:

1. The Services Router sends out DHCP, BOOTP, RARP, or SLARP requests to obtain an IP address.
2. If a DHCP server responds, the router obtains the following:
  - An IP address and subnet mask
  - The address of the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP), Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), or File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server with the configuration file
  - The IP address of the TFTP server

Optionally, the hostname of the TFTP server is obtained from the DHCP server. Usually, the TFTP address or name is specified, not both. If the name is

specified, a DNS server must be available to translate the name of the TFTP server into an IP address.

If the TFTP server is not on the same LAN segment as the new Services Router, or if a specific router is required by the network, then the IP address of an intermediary router must be specified. This address is used as the location to receive TFTP requests for autoinstallation.

## **Automatic Configuration of a New Services Router**

After a new Services Router obtains an IP address, autoinstallation attempts to download a configuration file using one of the following methods:

- Host-specific configuration. If the DHCP server specifies the name of the host-specific configuration file (boot file), the specific filename is used in the TFTP server request. The new Services Router makes three unicast TFTP requests for the specified boot file. If these attempts fail, then the router makes three broadcast requests to any available TFTP server looking for the specified boot file.
- Default configuration. If the boot file cannot be located, or the new Services Router does not receive a specified boot filename from the DHCP server, the autoinstallation process then unicasts or broadcasts TFTP requests for a default router configuration file called *network.conf*. The default configuration file, *network.conf*, contains hostname-to-IP address mapping information.

If there is no entry for the new Services Router, the autoinstallation process sends out a DNS request and attempts to resolve the hostname. If the J-series Services Router can determine its hostname, a TFTP request is sent for the *hostname.conf* file. The variable, *hostname*, is replaced by the hostname of the router. If the new Services Router is unable to map its IP address to a hostname, then TFTP requests are sent for the default configuration file, *router.conf*.

After the configuration file is downloaded from the TFTP server, it is loaded onto the Services Router and committed.

## **Before You Begin**

---

To configure a network for autoinstallation of Services Routers, complete the following tasks:

- Configure a DHCP server on your network to meet your network requirements.

- Create a configuration file and place it on a TFTP server on the network. A configuration file can be either of the following:
  - A host-specific file with the name *hostname.conf* where *hostname* is the name of the Services Router.
  - A default configuration file with the minimum configuration necessary to telnet into the new Services Router for further configuration.
- Physically attach the Services Router to the network using one or more of the following interface types
  - Fast Ethernet
  - Serial with HDLC encapsulation
- If the DHCP response contains only the hostname for the TFTP server, add IP address-to-hostname mapping for the TFTP server to a DNS database file.
- To use an existing router to receive TFTP requests and forward them to the TFTP server, add additional IP addresses of the hosts providing the TFTP service.

If you choose to create a host-specific configuration file, you must also complete the following tasks:

- Configure the DHCP server to provide a configuration filename to the new Services Router. This filename is then used to request a configuration file from a TFTP server. Copy the host-specific configuration to the TFTP server.
- Copy a default configuration file named *network.conf* to the TFTP server. This file contains IP address-to-hostname mappings in the format *ip host ip address hostname* entries. If a host-specific configuration file is not specified by the DHCP server, this file is used to create a hostname for the new Services Router.
- Add the IP address-to-hostname mapping for the new Services Router to a DNS database file.

## Configuring Autoinstallation with a Configuration Editor

---

To configure autoinstallation:

1. Navigate to the top of the configuration hierarchy in either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.
2. To configure autoinstallation, perform the configuration tasks described in Table 51.
3. If you are using the J-Web interface, click **Commit** to view a summary of your changes, then click **OK** to commit the configuration. If you are using the CLI, commit the configuration by entering the `commit` command.



- To check the configuration, see “Verifying Autoinstallation” on page 133.

**Table 51: Configuring Autoinstallation**

Task	J-Web Configuration Editor	CLI Configuration Editor
Navigate to the <b>System</b> level in the configuration hierarchy.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Configuration &gt; View and Edit &gt; Edit Configuration</b>.</li> <li>Next to System, click <b>Configure or Edit</b>.</li> </ol>	From the top of the configuration hierarchy, enter <code>edit system</code> .
Enable autoinstallation.	Select <b>Autoinstallation</b> , and then click <b>Configure</b> .	Enter <code>set autoinstallation configuration servers url</code> .
Add the configuration servers by specifying the URL address of a server from which to obtain configuration files.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next to Configuration servers, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>Type the location of the configuration server in the Url box.</li> <li>If a password is required to access the server, type it into the Password box.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b> to return to the Autoinstallation page.</li> </ol>	
Configure one or more Fast Ethernet or serial interfaces to perform autoinstallation, and one or two procurement protocols for each interface. The router uses the protocols to send a request for an IP address from the interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ BOOTP—Sends requests over all interfaces.</li> <li>■ RARP—Sends requests over Ethernet interfaces.</li> <li>■ SLARP—Sends requests over serial interfaces.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next to Interfaces, click <b>Add new entry</b>.</li> <li>Type the name of the interface into the Interface name box.</li> <li>Select one or two types of protocol used by autoinstallation over the interface. You can select <b>Bootp</b>, <b>Rarp</b>, or <b>Slarp</b>.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b> to return to the Autoinstallation page.</li> </ol>	Enter <code>set autoinstallation interfaces interface-name</code> , then one of the following protocols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <code>bootp</code></li> <li>■ <code>rarp</code></li> <li>■ <code>slarp</code></li> </ul> For example, to set two address procurement protocols, enter the following command:  <code>set autoinstallation interfaces fe-2/0/0 bootp rarp</code>

## Verifying Autoinstallation

To verify that a Services Router is configured for autoinstallation, perform the following task.

### Verifying Autoinstallation Status

**Purpose** Display the status of the autoinstallation feature on a Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show system autoinstallation status command.

**Sample Output** `user@host> show system autoinstallation status`

```
Autoinstallation status:
Master state: Active
Last committed file: None
Configuration server of last committed file: 10.25.100.1
Interface:
  Name: fe-0/0/0
  State: Configuration Acquisition
  Acquired:
    Address: 192.168.124.75
    Hostname: host-fe-000
    Hostname source: DNS
    Configuration filename: router-fe-000.conf
    Configuration filename server: 10.25.100.3
  Address acquisition:
    Protocol: DHCP Client
    Acquired address: None
    Protocol: RARP Client
    Acquired address: None
Interface:
  Name: fe-0/0/1
  State: None
  Address acquisition:
    Protocol: DHCP Client
    Acquired address: None
    Protocol: RARP Client
    Acquired address: None
```

**What It Means** The output shows the parameters configured for autoinstallation. Verify that the values displayed are correct for the Services Router when it is deployed on the destination network.

## Chapter 9

# Installing and Managing J-series Licenses

To enable some JUNOS software features and use certain additional ports on a J-series Services Router, you must purchase, install, and manage separate software licenses. The presence on the router of the appropriate software license keys (passwords) determines the features and ports you can configure and use.

For information about how to purchase J-series software licenses, contact your Juniper Networks sales representative.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- J-series License Overview on page 135
- Before You Begin on page 137
- Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 138
- Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI on page 141
- Verifying J-series License Management on page 142

## J-series License Overview

---

The J-series set of licenses is composed of two primary types: feature licenses and port licenses. Each type of license is valid for only a single Services Router. To manage the licenses, you must understand the components of a license key.

This section contains the following topics:

- Software Feature Licenses on page 136
- Port Licenses on page 136
- License Key Components on page 137

## Software Feature Licenses

Each feature license is tied to exactly one software feature, and that license is valid for exactly one Services Router. Table 52 lists the Services Router software features that require licenses.

**Table 52: J-series Services Router Software Feature Licenses**

Licensed Software Feature	License Name
<b>Stateful Firewall Filters and NAT</b>	
Stateful firewall and Network Address Translation (NAT) on the J2300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services stateful-firewall]</code> hierarchy.	J2300 Services Router Software License for Stateful Firewall
Stateful firewall and NAT on the J4300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services stateful-firewall]</code> hierarchy.	J4300 Services Router Software License for Stateful Firewall
Stateful firewall and NAT on the J6300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services stateful-firewall]</code> hierarchy.	J6300 Services Router Software License for Stateful Firewall
<b>IPSec VPN Tunneling</b>	
IPSec VPN tunneling on the J2300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services ipsec-vpn]</code> hierarchy.	J2300 Services Router Software License for IPSec Tunneling
IPSec VPN tunneling on the J4300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services ipsec-vpn]</code> hierarchy.	J4300 Services Router Software License for IPSec Tunneling
IPSec VPN tunneling on the J6300 platform—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit services ipsec-vpn]</code> hierarchy.	J6300 Services Router Software License for IPSec Tunneling
<b>IBM Networking</b>	
Data link switching (DLSw) on all J-series Services Routers	J-series Services Router Software License for Data Link Switching (DLSw) Support
<b>Traffic Analysis</b>	
J-Flow traffic analysis—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit forwarding-options sampling]</code> and <code>[edit forwarding-options accounting]</code> hierarchies.	J-series Services Router Software License for J-Flow Traffic Analysis
<b>BGP Route Reflectors</b>	
Advanced Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) features that enable route reflectors—all configuration statements within the <code>[edit protocols bgp cluster]</code> hierarchy. BGP clusters allow routers to act as route reflectors by enabling the readvertising of BGP routes to internal peers.	J-series Services Router Software License for Advanced Border Router Protocol Support

## Port Licenses

Each port license is tied to exactly one licensed port, and that license is valid for exactly one Services Router. To enable multiple ports, you must have a license for each licensed port. Table 53 lists the additional Services Router port licenses.

**Table 53: J-series Services Router Port Licenses**

<b>Licensed Port</b>	<b>License Name</b>
<b>T1</b>	
Additional port on a T1 Physical Interface Module (PIM).	J-series Services Router Software License for One Additional T1 Port
<b>E1</b>	
Additional port on an E1 PIM.	J-series Services Router Software License for One Additional E1 Port
<b>Serial</b>	
Additional port on a serial PIM.	J-series Services Router Software License for One Additional Serial Port
<b>Fast Ethernet</b>	
Additional port on a Fast Ethernet PIM.	J-series Services Router Software License for One Additional Fast Ethernet Port

The LAN ports (fe-0/0/0 and fe-0/0/1) do not require port licenses.

Additionally, one port per PIM can be configured without a port license. A port license is required only if you configure more than one port on a particular PIM.

## License Key Components

A license key consists of two parts:

- License ID—Alphanumeric string that uniquely identifies the license key. When a license is generated, it is given a license ID.
- License data—Block of binary data that defines and stores all license key objects.

For example, in the following typical license key, the string `li29183743` is the license ID, and the trailing block of data is the license data:

```
li29183743 4ky27y acasck 82fsj6 jzsn4q ix8i8d adj7kr
            8uq38t ix8i8d jzsn4q ix8i8d 4ky27y acasck
            82fsj6 ii8i7e adj7kr 8uq38t ks2923 a9382e
```

The license data defines the device ID for which the license is valid and the version of the license.

## Before You Begin

Before you begin managing the J-series licenses, complete the following tasks:

- Purchase the licenses you require.
- Establish basic connectivity. See “Establishing Basic Connectivity” on page 107.

## Managing J-series Licenses with the J-Web Interface

To manage licenses with the J-Web interface, you perform the following tasks:

- Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 140
- Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 140
- Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface on page 141
- Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface on page 141

Figure 54 shows the J-Web Licenses page.

**Figure 54: Licenses Page**

Logged in as: **regress**

[Help](#) [About](#) [Logout](#)

**Router - J6300**

**Monitor / Configuration / Diagnose / Manage**

**Manage > Licenses**

### Licenses

#### Feature Summary

Feature	Free Ports Used	Licenses Used	Licenses Installed	Licenses Needed
Stateful firewall		1	0	1
IPSec VPN tunnelling		1	1	0
One additional T1 port	1	0	0	0
One additional fast ethernet port	2	0	1	0
J-FLOW traffic analysis (CFLOW reporting)		0	1	0
Border Gateway Protocol route reflection		0	1	0

The Licenses page displays a summary of licensed features that are configured on the Services Router and a list of the licenses that are installed on the router. The information on the license management page is summarized in Table 54.

**Table 54: Summary of License Management Fields**

Field Name	Definition
<b>Feature Summary</b>	
Feature	<p>Name of the licensed feature or port:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ J-series licenses listed in Table 52 and Table 53</li> <li>■ <b>All features</b>—All-inclusive licenses</li> </ul>
Free Ports Used	<p>If the feature is an interface, this field lists the number of free ports for that interface that are currently configured.</p> <p>If the feature is not an interface, this field is blank.</p>
Licenses Used	Number of licenses currently being used on the router. Usage is determined by the configuration on the router. If a port license exists and that port is configured, the license is considered used.
Licenses Installed	Number of licenses installed on the router for the particular feature or port.
Licenses Needed	<p>Number of licenses required for legal use of the feature or port. Usage is determined by the configuration on the router:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If a feature is configured and the license for that feature is not installed, a single license is needed.</li> <li>■ If one or more ports are configured beyond the number of licenses installed on the router, a single license is needed for each additional configured port.</li> </ul>
<b>Installed Licenses</b>	
ID	Unique alphanumeric ID of the license.
State	<p><b>Valid</b>—The installed license key is valid.</p> <p><b>Invalid</b>—The installed license key is not valid.</p>
Version	Numeric version number of the license key.

**Table 54: Summary of License Management Fields (continued)**

Field Name	Definition
Group	<p>If the license defines a group license, this field displays the group definition.</p> <p>If the license requires a group license, this field displays the required group definition.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Because group licenses are currently unsupported, this field is always blank.</p>
Enabled Features	Name of the feature that is enabled with the particular license.

### ***Adding New Licenses with the J-Web Interface***

To add a new license key on a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Add** to add a new license key.
3. Do *one* of the following, using a blank line to separate multiple license keys:
  - In the License File URL box, type the full URL to the destination file containing the license key to be added.
  - In the License Key Text box, paste the license key text, in plain-text format, for the license to be added.
4. Click **OK** to add the license key.
5. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

### ***Deleting Licenses with the J-Web Interface***

To delete one or more license keys from a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Select the check box of the license or licenses you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.



## Displaying License Keys with the J-Web Interface

To display the license keys installed on a Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Display Keys** to display all the license keys installed on the router.

A screen displaying the license keys in text format appears. Multiple licenses are separated by a blank line.

3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

## Downloading Licenses with the J-Web Interface

To download the license keys installed on the Services Router with the J-Web license manager:

1. In the J-Web interface, select **Manage > Licenses**.
2. Under Installed Licenses, click **Download Keys** to download all the license keys installed on the router to a single file.
3. Select **Save it to disk** and specify the file to which the license keys are to be written.
4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

## Managing J-series Licenses with the CLI

---

To manage the J-series licenses with the CLI, perform the following tasks.

- Adding New Licenses with the CLI on page 141
- Deleting a License with the CLI on page 142
- Saving License Keys with the CLI on page 142

## Adding New Licenses with the CLI

To add a new license key to the Services Router with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. Enter one of the following CLI commands:
  - To add a license key from a file or URL, enter the following command, specifying the filename or the URL where the key is located:

**request system license add** *filename | url*

- To add a license key from the terminal, enter the following command:

**request system license add terminal**

3. When prompted, enter the license key, separating multiple license keys with a blank line.

If the license key you enter is invalid, an error is generated when you press Ctrl-D to exit license entry mode.

4. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

### **Deleting a License with the CLI**

To delete a license key from the Services Router with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. Enter the following command for each license, specifying the license ID. You can delete only one license at a time.

**request system license delete** *license-id*

3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

### **Saving License Keys with the CLI**

To save the licenses installed on the Services Router to a file with the CLI:

1. Enter operational mode in the CLI.
2. To save the installed license keys to a file or URL, enter the following command:

**request system license save** *filename | url*

For example, the following command saves the installed license keys to a file named `license.config`:

**request system license save ftp://user@host/license.conf**

3. Go on to “Verifying J-series License Management” on page 142.

## **Verifying J-series License Management**

---

To verify J-series license management, perform these tasks:

- Displaying Installed Licenses on page 143

- Displaying License Usage on page 144
- Displaying Installed License Keys on page 145

## Displaying Installed Licenses

**Purpose** Verify that the expected licenses are installed and active on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show system license command.

**Sample Output** user@router> **show system license**

```
License usage:
      Feature name      Free ports   Licenses   Licenses   Licenses
                        used         used     installed  needed
all                               0           1           0
firewall                  1           1           1           0
if-t1-4                   1           1           4           0
if-fe                     2           0           0           0
ipsec-vpn                 1           1           1           0

Licenses installed:
License identifier: li29183743
  State: valid
  License version: 2
  Valid for device: jp47859620

License identifier: li48293123
  State: valid
  License version: 2
  Valid for device: jp47859620
  Features:
    firewall          - Stateful firewall

License identifier: li72194673
  State: valid
  License version: 2
  Valid for device: jp47859620
  Features:
    if-t1-4           - Four additional T1 ports

License identifier: li41597793
  State: valid
  License version: 2
  Valid for device: jp47859620
  Features:
    ipsec-vpn         - IPSec VPN tunnelling
```

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the license usage and a list of the licenses installed on the Services Router. Verify the following information:

- Each license is present. Licenses are listed in ascending alphanumeric order by license ID.
- The state of each license is valid.

A state of **invalid** indicates that the license key is not a valid license key. Either it was entered incorrectly or it is not valid for the specific device.

- The feature for each license is the expected feature. The features enabled are listed by license. An all-inclusive license has **All features** listed.
- All configured features have the required licenses installed. The **Licenses needed** column must show that no licenses are required.

## Displaying License Usage

**Purpose** Verify that the licenses fully cover the feature configuration on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show system license usage` command.

**Sample Output** `user@router> show system license usage`

Feature name	Free ports used	Licenses used	Licenses installed	Licenses needed
all		0	1	0
bgp-reflection		0	1	1
firewall		1	1	0
if-t1-4	1	3	4	0
if-fe	2	0	2	1
ipsec-vpn		2	1	1

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the licenses installed on the Services Router and how they are used. Verify the following information:

- Each licensed feature and port is present. Features and ports are listed in ascending alphabetical order by license name. The number of licenses is shown in the fourth column. Verify that the appropriate number of licenses is installed.
- The number of used licenses matches the number of configured features and ports. If a licensed feature or port is configured, the feature or port is considered used. The sample output shows that stateful firewall and BGP route reflection are configured. Additionally, four T1 interfaces (one free port and three licensed ports) are configured. Two free and two licensed Fast Ethernet ports are configured, and one Fast Ethernet license has been installed.
- A license is installed on the Services Router for each configured feature and port. For every feature or port configured that does not have a license, one license is needed.

For example, the sample output shows that the user has configured four Fast Ethernet interfaces (two licensed interfaces and two free interfaces). This configuration requires two purchased licenses, but only one has been purchased. An additional license is required to be in compliance with license agreements.

## Displaying Installed License Keys

**Purpose** Verify the license keys installed on the Services Router.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show system license keys command.

**Sample Output** user@router> **show system license keys**

```
li29183743 jzsn4q ix8i8d 4ky27y jzsn4q ix8i8d adj7kr
            8uq38t 82fsj6 ii8i7e adj7kr 82fsj6 acasck
            ix8i8d 4ky27y acasck 8uq38t ks2923 a938

li48293123 4ky27y acasck 82fsj6 jzsn4q ix8i8d eks12r
            8uq38t ix8i8d jzsn4q ix8i8d 4ky27y acasck
            82fsj6 ii8i7e adj7kr 8uq38t ks2923 a9382e

li83474929 dkdis8 adj7kr 4ky27y aclscck 82fsj6 jzsn4q
            8uq38t jzsn4q 9dk2i2 ii3i8d akd239 ks2923
            492idf oo8i7e adj7kr 8u3892 3ksio
```

**What It Means** The output shows a list of the license keys installed on the Services Router. Verify that each expected license key is present.



## **Part 3**

# **Maintaining a Services Router**

- Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components on page 149
- Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware on page 179





## Chapter 10

# Replacing and Troubleshooting Hardware Components

Because many of the Services Router's hardware components are field-replaceable units (FRUs), you can remove and replace them yourself. When you need to replace a router component, contact your customer support or sales representative to order the field-replaceable unit (FRU) that contains the component. For instructions, see "Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware" on page 179.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Replacing Hardware Components on page 149
- Troubleshooting Hardware Components on page 175

## Replacing Hardware Components

---

This section contains the following topics:

- Tools and Parts Required on page 150
- Replacing the Console Port Cable on page 150
- Replacing a PIM on page 150
- Replacing PIM Cables on page 154
- Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 155
- Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 157
- Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device on page 159
- Removing and Installing DRAM Modules on page 161
- Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J2300 or J4300 Router on page 165
- Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J2300 or J4300 Router on page 165
- Replacing Power System Components in a J6300 Router on page 167

## Tools and Parts Required

To replace hardware components, you need the tools and parts listed in Table 55.

**Table 55: Tools and Parts Required**

Tool or Part	Components
Electrostatic bag or antistatic mat	All
Electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding wrist strap	All
Flat-blade screwdriver, approximately 1/4 in. (6 mm)	PIM
Phillips (+) screwdriver, number 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Compact flash</li> <li>■ DRAM</li> <li>■ Power system components</li> </ul>

## Replacing the Console Port Cable

The RJ-45 port labeled CONSOLE on the Services Router's front panel allows you to connect the router to an external management device, such as a laptop or a terminal server. For cable specifications, see "Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts" on page 189.

To replace the console port cable, follow this procedure:

1. Locate an appropriate replacement cable and connector.
2. Plug the Ethernet connector at either end of the cable into the console port on the front panel (see Figure 52 and Figure 53).
3. Plug the connector at the other end of the cable into the external management device. If you are connecting to a DB-9 serial port, use the provided RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter.

## Replacing a PIM

Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) in J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are field replaceable. The router must be powered off before the PIMs are removed or installed. This section contains the following topics:

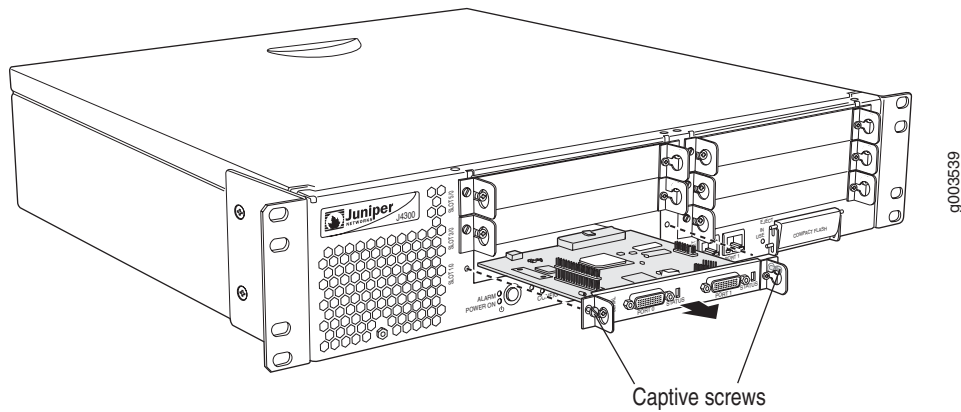
- Removing a PIM on page 151
- Installing a PIM on page 152

## Removing a PIM

The PIMs are installed in the front of the Services Router. A PIM weighs less than 1 lb (0.5 kg).

To remove a PIM (see Figure 55):

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface to receive the PIM.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the Services Router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Verify that the **POWER ON LED** blinks and then turns off.
4. Label the cables connected to the PIM so that you can later reconnect each cable to the correct PIM.
5. Disconnect the cables from the PIM.
6. If necessary, arrange the cables to prevent them from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
7. Loosen the captive screws on each side of the PIM faceplate.
8. Grasp the handles on each side of the PIM faceplate and slide the PIM out of the router. Place it in the electrostatic bag or on the antistatic mat.
9. If you are not reinstalling a PIM into the emptied slot, install a blank PIM panel over the slot to maintain proper airflow.

**Figure 55: Removing a PIM**

## Installing a PIM

To install a PIM (see Figure 56):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the Services Router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED blinks and then turns off.
3. Align the notches in the connector at the rear of the PIM with the notches in the PIM slot in the Services Router, and then slide the PIM in until it lodges firmly in the router.



**CAUTION:** Slide the PIM straight into the slot to avoid damaging the components on the PIM.

4. Tighten the captive screws on each side of the PIM faceplate.
5. Insert the appropriate cables into the cable connectors on the PIM.
6. If necessary, arrange the cables to prevent them from dislodging or developing stress points:

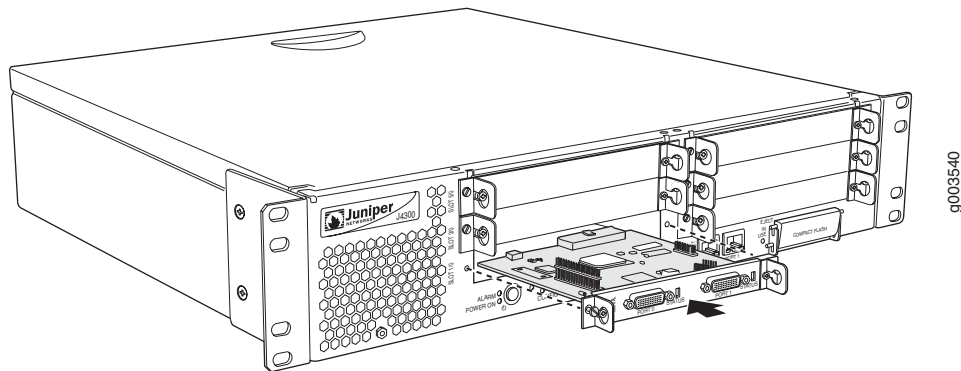
- Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
7. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.
  8. Verify that the PIM LEDs light steadily green to confirm that the PIM and its ports are online and operational. For more information about PIM LEDs, see “J2300 Physical Interface Module (PIM)” on page 18 or “J4300 and J6300 Physical Interface Modules (PIMs)” on page 29.

You can also verify correct PIM functioning by issuing the `show chassis fpc pic-status` command described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.



**NOTE:** In the `show chassis fpc pic-status` command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as a PIC number.

**Figure 56: Installing a PIM**



## Replacing PIM Cables

Removing and installing PIM cables does not affect Services Router function, except that a PIM does not receive or transmit data while its cable is disconnected. To replace a PIM cable, perform the following procedures:

- Removing a PIM Cable on page 154
- Installing a PIM Cable on page 154

### Removing a PIM Cable

To remove a PIM cable:

1. If you are removing all cables connected to the PIM, issue the following CLI command to take the PIM offline:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot pim-slot pic-slot 0 offline
```

For example, to take the PIM in slot 4 offline, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot 4 pic-slot 0 offline
```

For more information about the command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

2. Unplug the cable from the cable connector port.
3. Detach the cable from the destination port.

### Installing a PIM Cable

To install a PIM cable:

1. Have ready a length of the type of cable used by the PIM. For cable specifications, see “Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts” on page 189.
2. Insert the cable connector into the cable connector port on the PIM faceplate.
3. Arrange the cable as necessary to prevent it from dislodging or developing stress points:
  - Secure the cable so that it is not supporting its own weight as it hangs to the floor.
  - Place excess cable out of the way in a neatly coiled loop.
  - Use fasteners to maintain the shape of cable loops.
4. Insert the other end of the cable into the destination port.

5. Repeat the previous steps for any additional cables.
6. If the PIM is offline (its status LED is steadily red), issue the following CLI command to bring the PIM online:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot pim-slot pic-slot 0 online
```

For example, to bring the PIM in slot 4 online, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request chassis pic fpc-slot 4 pic-slot 0 online
```

For more information about the command, see the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

7. Verify that the PIM status LED shines steadily green to confirm that the PIM is online.

You can also verify correct PIM functioning by issuing the `show chassis fpc pic-status` command described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.



**NOTE:** In the `show chassis fpc pic-status` command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as a PIC number.

---

## Removing and Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

The primary compact flash drive is located in a slot at the rear of the Services Router as shown in Figure 2, Figure 8, and Figure 10. The compact flash disk that you install in the compact flash drive provides primary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode.

For information about configuring the primary compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To remove and install a primary compact flash disk, perform the following procedures:

- Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 155
- Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk on page 156

### Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

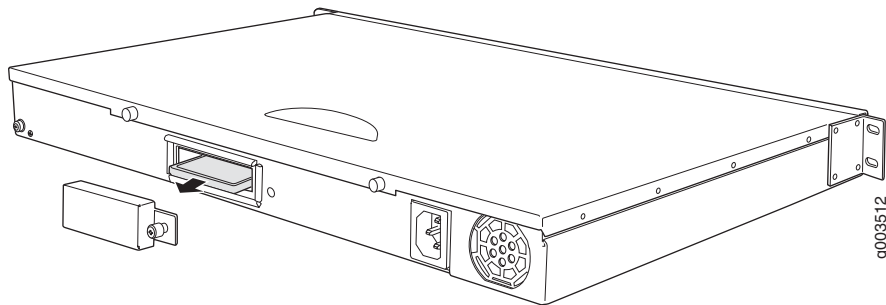
To remove the primary compact flash disk (see Figure 57):

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if

the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.

3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
4. Remove the power cord from the power supply.
5. Loosen the thumbscrew that secures the primary compact flash drive cover on the rear of the chassis.
6. Remove the compact flash drive cover.
7. Gently grasp the compact flash disk, and slide it out of the connector.
8. Place the compact flash disk on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag (see Figure 57).

**Figure 57: Removing the Primary Compact Flash Disk**



## Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk

To install the primary compact flash disk (see Figure 58):



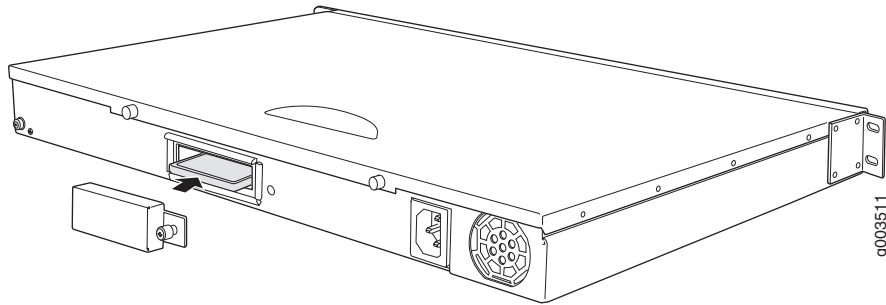
**NOTE:** If you plan to boot the Services Router from the primary compact flash disk, you must first configure the primary compact flash disk in another router or with a computer running UNIX or Cygwin. For more information, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
3. Remove the power cord from the power supply.



4. Loosen the thumbscrew that secures the primary compact flash drive cover on the rear of the chassis.
5. Remove the compact flash drive cover.
6. Slide the compact flash disk into the connector on the Routing Engine (see Figure 58).
7. Replace the compact flash drive cover.
8. Tighten the thumbscrew that secures the compact flash drive cover to the rear of the chassis.
9. Install the power cord into the power supply.
10. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

**Figure 58: Installing the Primary Compact Flash Disk**



### **Removing and Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk**

The removable compact flash disk is an optional component on J4300 and J6300 Services Routers. The removable compact flash disk provides secondary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode. If the primary compact flash disk fails on startup, the router boots from the removable compact flash disk.

For information about configuring the removable compact flash disk, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

To remove and install a removable compact flash disk, perform the following procedures:

- Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 158
- Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk on page 159

## Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk



**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might not have a backup compact flash drive. If no backup compact flash drive is installed, proceed directly to the next section, “Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk” on page 159.

The removable compact flash drive is located in a slot on the front panel of the Services Router. To remove the removable compact flash disk (see Figure 59):

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Verify the CF REMOVE LED is off.

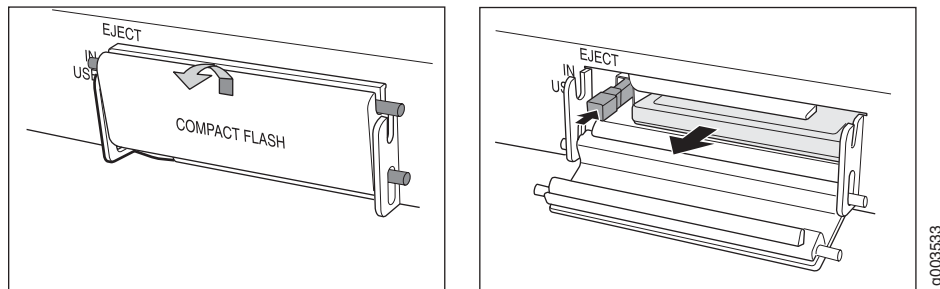
If the CF REMOVE LED is on, the router might have booted from the removable compact flash disk.

To see which device the router used to boot, issue the `show system storage` command from the CLI. For example:

```
user@host> show system storage
Filesystem      512-blocks      Used      Avail Capacity Mounted on
/dev/ad0s1a      218254        175546      40526      81% /
...
```

The boot device is mounted on `/`. The *primary* compact flash disk is located at `ad0`. The *removable* compact flash disk is located at `ad2`. The USB storage device is located at `usb0`. This example shows that the router booted from the primary compact flash disk.

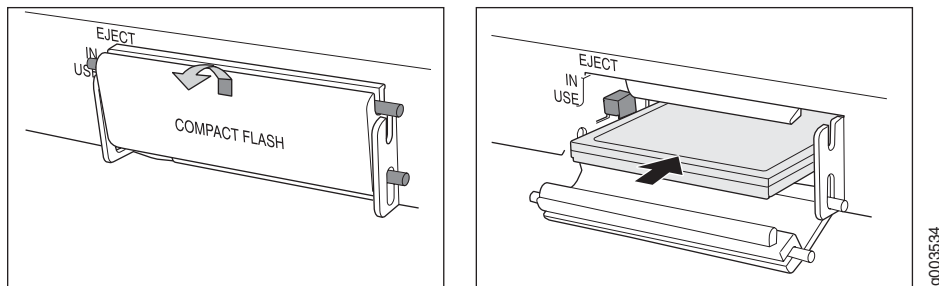
4. If the `show system storage` output indicates that the router booted from the removable compact flash disk, press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off before you remove the compact flash drive.
5. Slide the compact flash drive door up to unlatch the door, then tilt the top of the door out (see Figure 59).
6. Eject the removable compact flash disk by pressing the button to the left of the compact flash drive once to unlock the button, and again to eject the compact flash drive.
7. Gently grasp the compact flash disk, and slide it out of the connector.
8. Place the compact flash disk on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

**Figure 59: Removing the Removable Compact Flash Disk**

### Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk

To install the removable compact flash disk, follow this procedure (see Figure 60):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Slide the compact flash door up to unlatch the door, then tilt the top of the door out (see Figure 60).
3. Slide the compact flash disk into the connector on the Routing Engine.
4. Tilt the compact flash door in, and slide it down until it is secured.
5. To configure the removable compact flash disk with the request system snapshot command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

**Figure 60: Installing the Removable Compact Flash Disk**

### Removing and Installing the USB Storage Device

The USB storage device is an optional component on J-series Services Routers. If installed, the USB storage device provides secondary storage for the router. It can accommodate software images, configuration files, and microcode. If the primary

compact flash disk fails on startup, and the removable compact flash disk is not installed or fails, the router boots from the USB storage device.

For information about configuring the USB storage device, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

To remove and install a USB storage device, perform the following procedures:

- Removing the USB Storage Device on page 160
- Installing the USB Storage Device on page 161

## Removing the USB Storage Device



**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might not have a USB storage device. If no USB storage device is installed, proceed directly to the next section, “Installing the USB Storage Device” on page 161.

The USB storage device is installed into the USB port on the front panel of the Services Router. To remove the USB storage device:

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Verify that the router did not boot from the USB storage device by issuing the `show system storage` command from the CLI. For example:

```
user@host> show system storage
Filesystem      512-blocks      Used      Avail Capacity Mounted on
/dev/ad0s1a      218254         175546     40526      81%  /
...
```

The boot device is mounted on /. The primary compact flash disk is located at `ad0`. The removable compact flash disk is located at `ad2`. The USB storage device is located at `usb0`. This example shows that the router booted from the primary compact flash disk.

4. If the `show system storage` output indicates that the router booted from the USB storage device, press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the **POWER ON** LED to turn off before you remove the USB storage device.
5. Gently grasp the USB storage device and slide it out of the USB port.

6. Place the USB storage device on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

## Installing the USB Storage Device

To install the USB storage device:



**NOTE:** For a list of supported USB storage devices, see the *J-series Services Router Release Notes* at <http://www.juniper.net>.

---

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Orient the USB storage device with the USB port on the front panel of the router.
3. Insert the USB storage device into the USB port. If the USB storage device does not easily slide into the port, it might not be oriented correctly. Turn the USB storage device upside-down and try again.
4. To configure the USB storage device with the `request system snapshot` command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

## Removing and Installing DRAM Modules

The DRAM installed on the Routing Engine provides storage for the routing and forwarding tables and for other Routing Engine processes. The design of the Routing Engine allows you to modify the DRAM configuration by adding dual inline memory modules (DIMMs) to the Routing Engine board, or removing DIMMs from the board. The Routing Engine contains one or two 168-pin DIMMs.

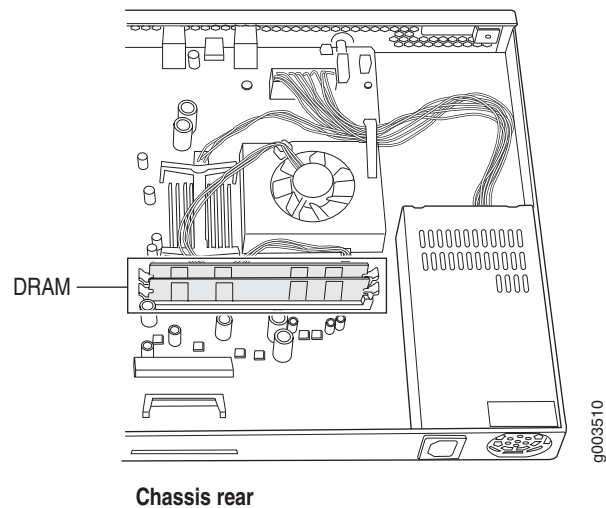
The DRAM modules are located on the top of the Routing Engine, as shown in Figure 61 and Figure 62.



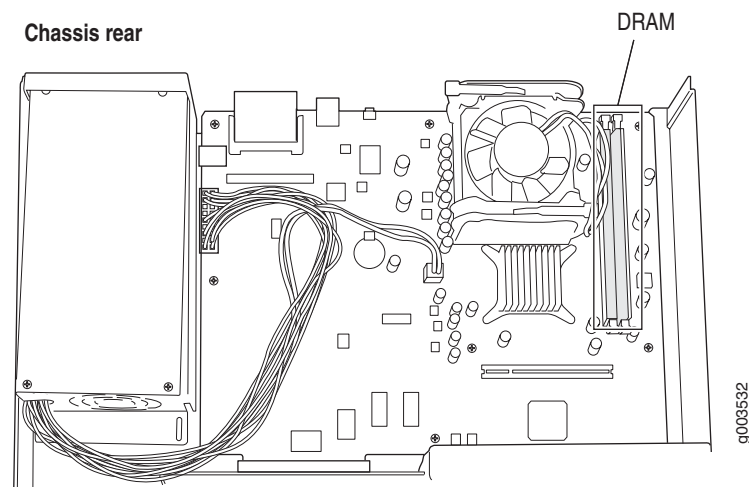
**CAUTION:** DRAM modules are not transferable across J-series platforms. Do not install a J2300 DIMM in a J4300 chassis, for example.

---

**Figure 61: J2300 DRAM Location**



**Figure 62: J4300 and J6300 DRAM Location**



To modify the DRAM configuration, use the following procedures:

- Removing a DRAM Module on page 163
- Installing a DRAM Module on page 164

## Removing a DRAM Module

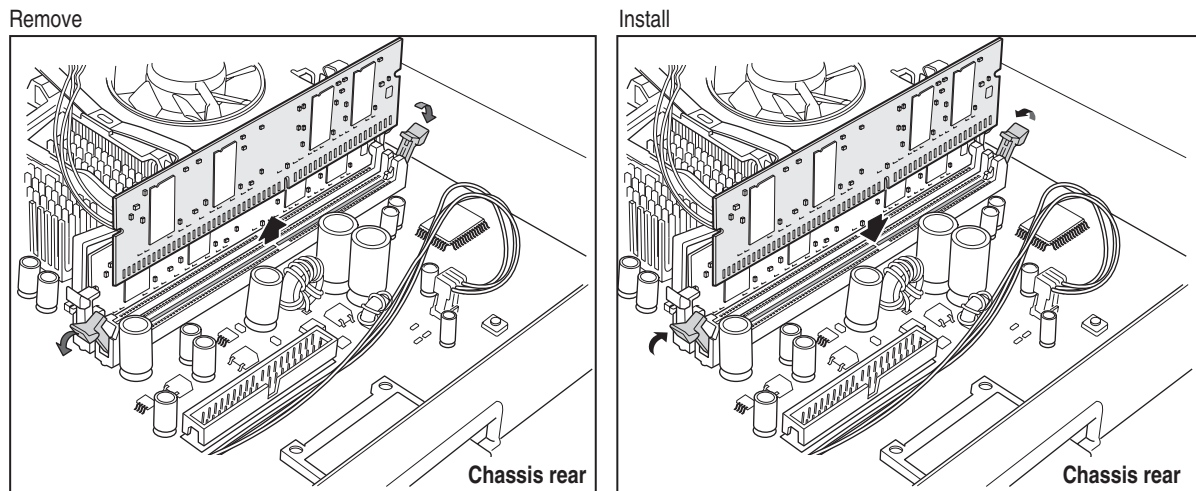


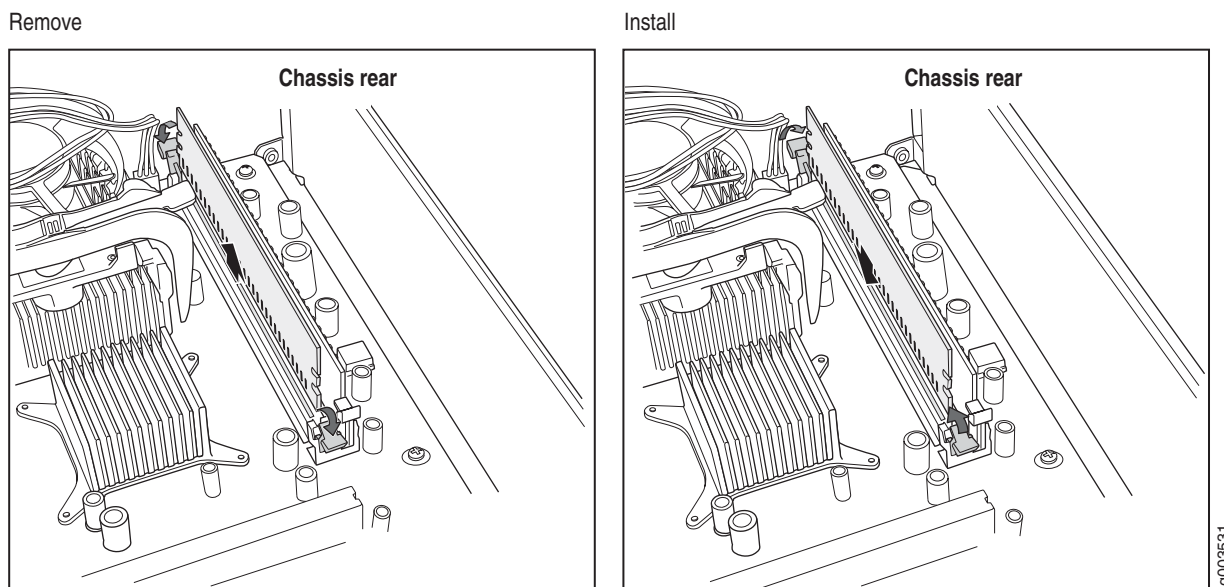
**NOTE:** Depending on your configuration, the Services Router might have an empty DRAM slot. If you are adding a single DIMM to the DRAM configuration, proceed directly to the next section, “Installing a DRAM Module” on page 164.

To remove a DRAM module:

1. Place an electrostatic bag or antistatic mat on a flat, stable surface.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
4. Loosen the thumbscrews at the rear of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
5. Slide the cover off the chassis.
6. To release the DRAM module, press the plastic ejectors on both sides of the module (see Figure 63 or Figure 64).
7. Grasp the DRAM module, being careful not to touch any electrical components on the module, and firmly pull it out of the slot on the Routing Engine.
8. Place the DRAM module on the antistatic mat or in the electrostatic bag.

**Figure 63: Adding or Replacing a DRAM Module in a J2300 Chassis**



**Figure 64: Adding or Replacing a DRAM Module in a J4300 or J6300 Chassis**

### Installing a DRAM Module

To install a DRAM module onto the Routing Engine:

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
3. Loosen the thumbscrews at the rear of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
4. Slide the cover off the chassis.
5. Remove the DRAM module from its electrostatic bag.
6. To open the empty DRAM slot, press the plastic ejectors on both sides (see Figure 63 or Figure 64).
7. Grasp the DRAM module by the edges, being careful not to touch any electrical components.
8. Pressing firmly on both ends, push the module into the slot until the ejectors return completely to the closed position (see Figure 63 or Figure 64).
9. Slide the cover onto the chassis.



10. Tighten the thumbscrews at the rear of the chassis that secure the cover to the chassis.
11. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

You can view the DRAM configuration and verify that it was installed correctly by issuing the `show chassis routing-engine` command, described in the *JUNOS System Basics and Services Command Reference*.

## Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J2300 or J4300 Router

To replace the power cord for an AC power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cord with the type of plug appropriate for your geographical location (see “AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications” on page 87).
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
4. Unplug the power cord from the power source receptacle.
5. Unplug the power cord from the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
6. Insert the appliance coupler end of the replacement power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
7. Insert the power cord plug into an AC power source receptacle.



**NOTE:** The router must be connected to a dedicated AC power feed. For information about connecting to AC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

---

8. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
9. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

## Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J2300 or J4300 Router

To replace a power cable for a DC power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cable and a lug that meet the specifications defined in “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 88.



**CAUTION:** A licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the power cable that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

---

2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER ON** LED to turn off.
4. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.

---

5. Remove the power cable from the DC power source.
6. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
7. Within the terminal block, remove the screw that fastens the power cable lug to the terminal block.
8. Carefully move the power cable out of the way.
9. Using the removed screw, secure the replacement power cable to the appropriate terminal.

The screw contains a captive washer used to secure the power cable lug to the terminal block.



**NOTE:** The router must be connected to a dedicated DC power feed. For information about connecting to DC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

---

10. Dress the power cable appropriately.
11. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
12. Verify that the power cable does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
13. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

## Replacing Power System Components in a J6300 Router

The J6300 Services Router has one or two load-sharing AC or DC power supplies (see Figure 10 or Figure 11), located at the right rear of the chassis. Each power supply provides power to all components in the router. The power supplies are fully redundant. If one power supply fails or is removed, the remaining power supply instantly assumes the entire electrical load. One power supply can provide full power for as long as the router is operational.

Each J6300 power supply is hot-insertable and hot-removable.



**CAUTION:** Do not leave a power supply slot empty for more than a short time while the Services Router is operational. The power supply or a blank power supply panel must remain in the chassis for proper airflow.

---

To replace a power supply in a J6300 router, use the following procedures:

- Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router on page 167
- Removing a DC Power Supply from a J6300 Router on page 168
- Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router on page 170
- Installing a DC Power Supply in a J6300 Router on page 171
- Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J6300 Router on page 173
- Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J6300 Router on page 174

## Removing an AC Power Supply from a J6300 Router

The power supplies are located at the right rear of the chassis. A power supply weighs 2.4 lb (1.1 kg).

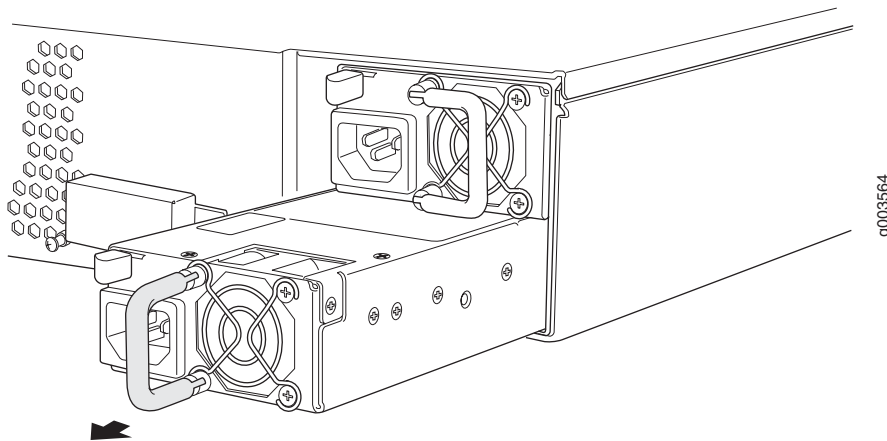
To remove an AC power supply from a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 65):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if

the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.

2. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER ON** LED to turn off.
3. Unplug the power cord from the power source receptacle.
4. Unplug the power cord from the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
5. Slide the ejector tab on the power supply faceplate to the right and hold it in place to unlock the power supply.
6. Grasp the handle on the power supply faceplate, and pull firmly to start removing the power supply. Slide it halfway out of the chassis (see Figure 65).
7. Place one hand underneath the power supply to support it and slide it completely out of the chassis.
8. If you are not reinstalling a power supply into the emptied slot, install a blank power supply panel over the slot.

**Figure 65: Removing an AC Power Supply**



### Removing a DC Power Supply from a J6300 Router

The power supplies are located at the right rear of the chassis. A power supply weighs 2.4 lb (1.1 kg).

To remove a DC power supply from a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 66):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.

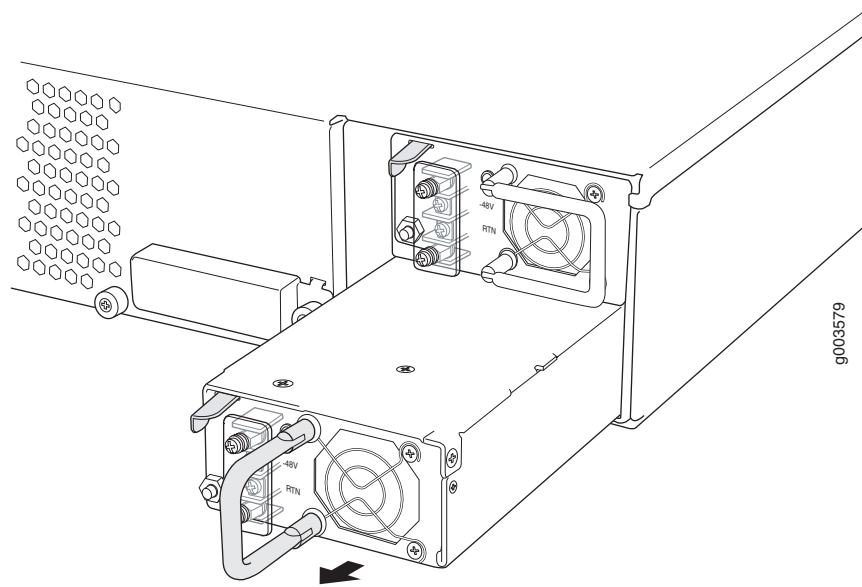
2. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER ON** LED to turn off.
3. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.

---

4. Remove the power cables from the DC power source.
5. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
6. Within the terminal block, remove the screws that fasten the power cable lugs to the terminal block.
7. Carefully move the power cables out of the way.
8. Slide the ejector tab on the power supply faceplate to the right, and hold it in place to unlock the power supply.
9. Grasp the handle on the power supply faceplate, and pull firmly to start removing the power supply. Slide it halfway out of the chassis (see Figure 66).
10. Place one hand underneath the power supply to support it, and slide it completely out of the chassis.
11. If you are not reinstalling a power supply into the emptied slot, install a blank power supply panel over the slot.

**Figure 66: Removing a DC Power Supply**

### Installing an AC Power Supply in a J6300 Router

To install an AC power supply in a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 67):

1. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
2. Using both hands, slide the power supply into the chassis until you feel resistance.
3. Firmly push the power supply into the chassis until it comes to a stop. Make sure that the power supply faceplate is flush with any adjacent power supply faceplate.
4. Insert the appliance coupler end of a power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
5. Insert the power cord plug into an AC power source receptacle.

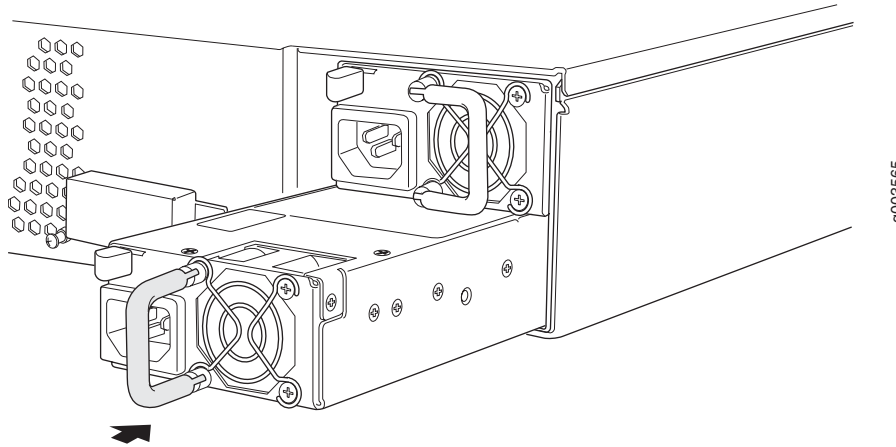


**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated AC power feed. For information about connecting to AC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

6. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.

7. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

**Figure 67: Installing an AC Power Supply**



### Installing a DC Power Supply in a J6300 Router

Each power supply in a DC-powered router must be connected to earth ground. A ground terminal is provided on each DC power supply for this purpose.

To install a DC power supply in a J6300 Services Router (see Figure 68):

1. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.

2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Using both hands, slide the power supply into the chassis until you feel resistance.

4. Firmly push the power supply into the chassis until it comes to a stop. Make sure that the power supply faceplate is flush with any adjacent power supply faceplate.
5. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
6. Within the terminal block, remove the two center screws next to the labels **-48 VDC** and **RTN**.  
  
Each screw contains a captive washer used to secure a power cable lug to the terminal block.
7. Using one of the removed screws, secure the positive (+) DC source power cable lug to the **RTN** terminal.
8. Using the other removed screw, secure the negative (-) DC source power cable lug to the **-48 VDC** terminal.

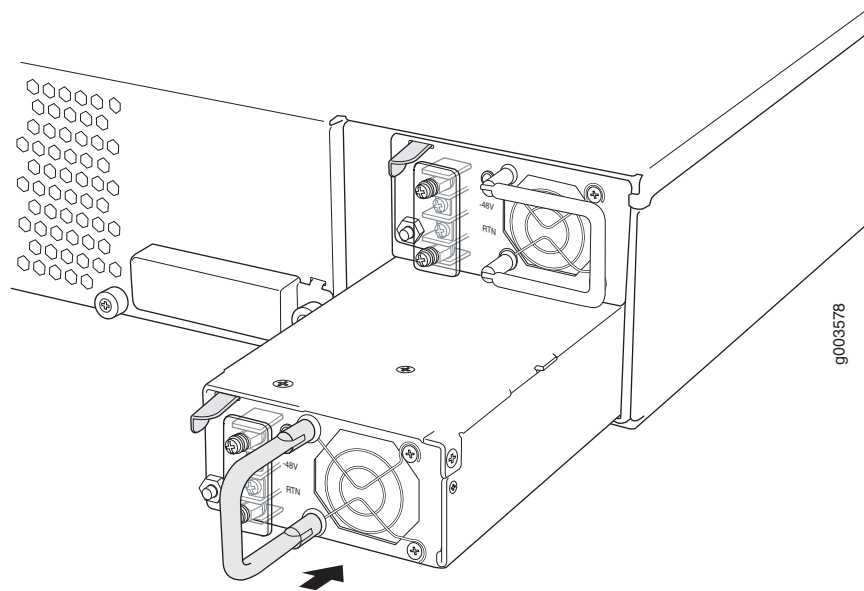


**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated DC power feed. For information about connecting to DC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

---

9. Dress the power cables appropriately.
10. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
11. Verify that the power cord does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
12. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER ON LED** lights steadily after you press the power button.



**Figure 68: Installing a DC Power Supply**

### Replacing an AC Power Supply Cord in a J6300 Router

To replace the AC power cord for a redundant power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cord with the type of plug appropriate for your geographical location (see “AC Power, Connection, and Power Cord Specifications” on page 87).
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the router. Wait for the POWER ON LED to turn off.
4. Unplug the power cord from the power source receptacle.
5. Unplug the power cord from the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
6. Insert the appliance coupler end of the replacement power cord into the appliance inlet on the power supply faceplate.
7. Insert the power cord plug into an AC power source receptacle.



**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated AC power feed. For information about connecting to AC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

---

8. Verify that the power cord does not block access to Services Router components or drape where people might trip on it.
9. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the **POWER ON LED** lights steadily after you press the power button.

### Replacing a DC Power Supply Cable in a J6300 Router

To replace a power cable for a DC power supply:

1. Locate a replacement power cable and a lug that meet the specifications defined in “Chassis Grounding” on page 99 and “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 88.



**CAUTION:** A licensed electrician must attach a cable lug to the power cable that you supply. A cable with an incorrectly attached lug can damage the router (for example, by causing a short circuit).

---

2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. Press and release the power button to power off the Services Router. Wait for the **POWER ON LED** to turn off.
4. Ensure that the voltage across the DC power source cable leads is 0 V and that there is no chance that the cable leads might become active during installation.



**CAUTION:** There is no standard color coding for DC power cables. The color coding used by the external DC power source at your site determines the color coding for the leads on the power cables that attach to the terminal studs on each power supply. You must ensure that power connections maintain the proper polarity. The power source cables might be labeled (+) and (–) to indicate their polarity.

---

5. Remove the power cable from the DC power source.

6. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the clear plastic cover protecting the terminal block.
7. Within the terminal block, remove the screw that fastens the power cable lug to the terminal block.
8. Carefully move the power cable out of the way.
9. Using the removed screw, secure the replacement power cable to the appropriate terminal.

The screw contains a captive washer used to secure the power cable lug to the terminal block.



**NOTE:** Each power supply must be connected to a dedicated DC power feed. For information about connecting to DC power sources, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.

---

10. Dress the power cable appropriately.
11. Replace the clear plastic cover over the terminal block.
12. Verify that the power cable does not block access to router components or drape where people might trip on it.
13. Press and release the power button to power on the router. Verify that the POWER ON LED lights steadily after you press the power button.

## Troubleshooting Hardware Components

---

This section provides an overview of the resources you can use to troubleshoot hardware problems on the Services Router:

- Chassis Alarm Conditions on page 175
- Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center on page 177

### Chassis Alarm Conditions

When the Routing Engine detects an alarm condition, it lights the yellow (amber) ALARM LED on the front panel. When the condition is corrected, the light turns off.



**NOTE:** The ALARM LED on the Services Router lights yellow whether the alarm condition is major (red) or minor (yellow).

---

To view a more detailed description of the alarm cause, issue the `show chassis alarms` CLI command:

```
user@host> show chassis alarms
```

Table 56 describes alarms that can occur for a chassis component such as the Routing Engine or a Physical Interface Module (PIM).

**Table 56: Chassis Alarm Conditions and Corrective Actions**

Component	Alarm Conditions	Corrective Action	Alarm Severity
Alternative boot media	The Services Router boots from an alternative boot device—the removable compact flash disk or the USB storage device.	Typically, the router boots from the primary compact flash disk. If you configured your router to boot from an alternative boot device, ignore this alarm condition.  If you did not configure the router to boot from an alternative boot device, contact JTAC. (See “Requesting Support” on page xx.)	Yellow (minor)
PIM	A PIM has failed.  When a PIM fails, it attempts to reboot. If the Routing Engine detects that a PIM is rebooting too often, it shuts down the PIM.	Replace the failed PIM. (See “Replacing a PIM” on page 150.)	Red (major)

**Table 56: Chassis Alarm Conditions and Corrective Actions (continued)**

Component	Alarm Conditions	Corrective Action	Alarm Severity
Routing Engine	An error occurred during the process of reading or writing compact flash.	Reformat the compact flash and install a bootable image. (See the <i>J-series Services Router Administration Guide</i> .)  If this remedy fails, you must replace the failed Routing Engine. To contact JTAC, see “Requesting Support” on page xx.	Yellow (minor)
	Routing Engine temperature is too warm.	■ Check the room temperature. (See “Router Environmental Tolerances” on page 83.)	Yellow (minor)
	Routing Engine temperature is too hot.	■ Check the air flow. (See “General Site Guidelines” on page 81.)  ■ Check the fans. (See “J2300 Cooling System” on page 19 or “J4300 and J6300 Cooling System” on page 31.) If you must replace a fan or the Routing Engine, contact JTAC. (See “Requesting Support” on page xx.)	Red (major)
	Routing Engine fan has failed.	Replace the failed fan. To contact JTAC, see “Requesting Support” on page xx.	Red (major)

### Contacting the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center

If you need assistance while troubleshooting a Services Router, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>, or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (from outside the United States).



## Chapter 11

# Contacting Customer Support and Returning Hardware

This chapter describes how to return the Services Router or individual components to Juniper Networks for repair or replacement. It contains the following topics:

- Locating Component Serial Numbers on page 179
- Contacting Customer Support on page 181
- Return Procedure on page 182
- Packing a Router or Component for Shipment on page 183

## Locating Component Serial Numbers

---

Before contacting Juniper Networks to request a Return Materials Authorization (RMA), you must find the serial number on the router or component. To list the router components and their serial numbers, enter the following command-line interface (CLI) command:

```
user@host> show chassis hardware
Hardware inventory:
Item          Version  Part number  Serial number  Description
Chassis                               JN000192AB     J4300
Midplane      REV 02.04 710-010001  CORE99563
System IO     REV 02.03 710-010003  CORE100885    P12/P45 System IO board
Routing Engine RevX2.6  750-010005  IWGS40735451  RE-J.2
FPC 0
PIC 0                               2x FE
```

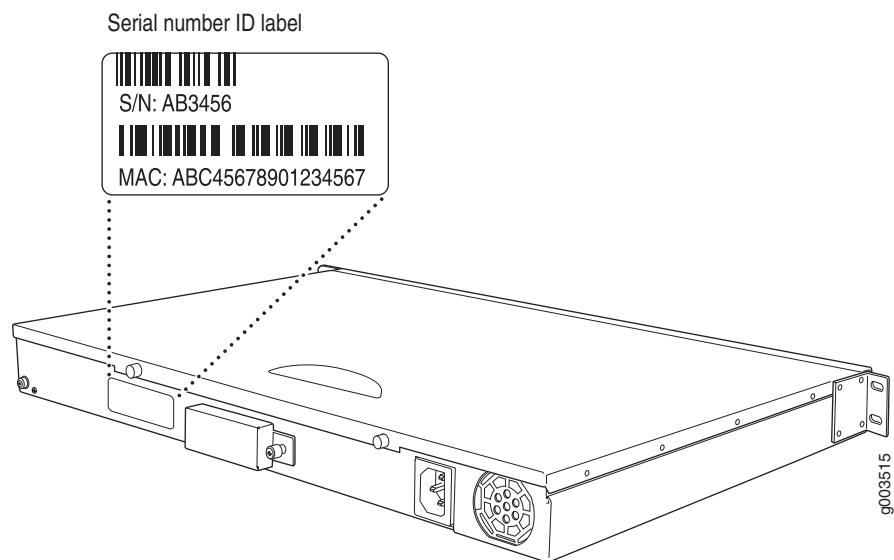


**NOTE:** In the `show chassis hardware` command, the PIM slot number is reported as an FPC number and the PIM number (always 0) is reported as the PIC number.

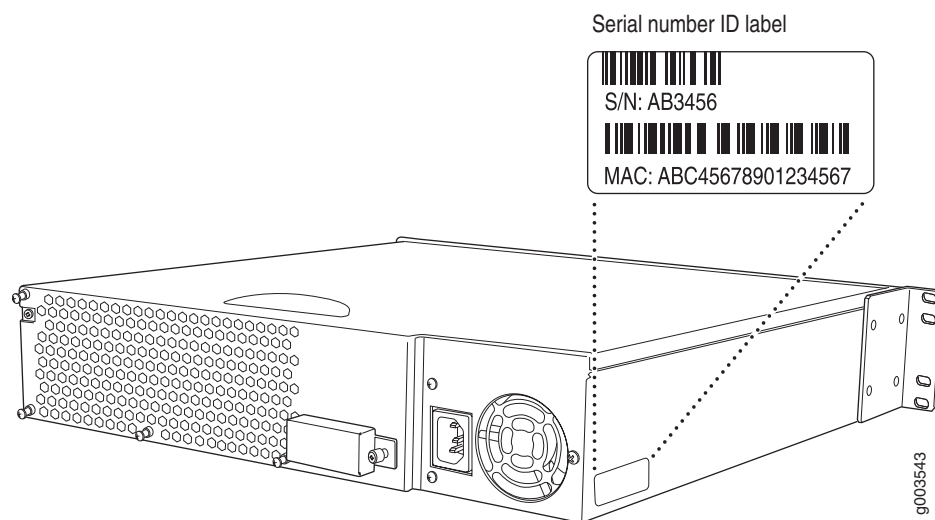
---

Most components also have a small rectangular serial number ID label (see Figure 69 through Figure 71) attached to the component body.

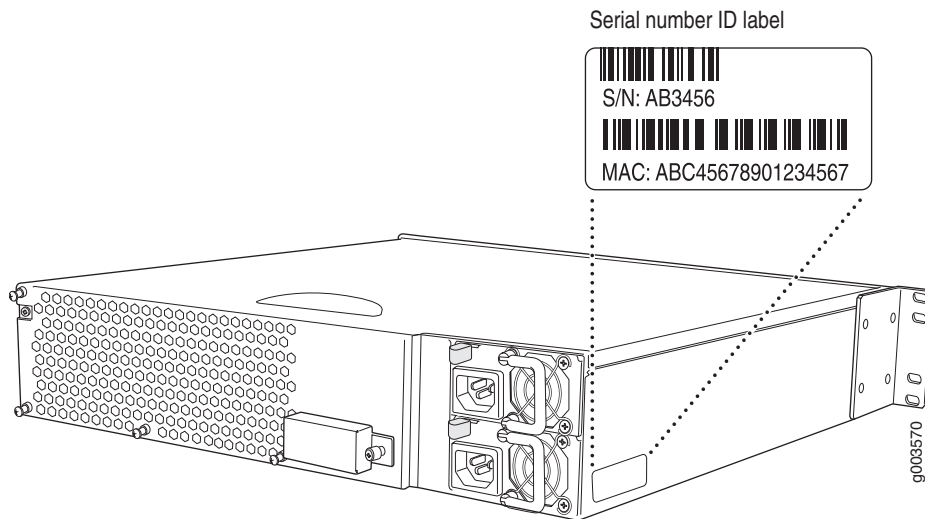
**Figure 69: J2300 Serial Number ID Label**



**Figure 70: J4300 Serial Number ID Label**





**Figure 71: J6300 Serial Number ID Label**

The following sections describe the label location on each type of component:

- PIM Serial Number Label on page 181
- J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels on page 181

### ***PIM Serial Number Label***

The PIMs installed in the J4300 and J6300 Services Routers are field-replaceable. Each PIM has a unique serial number. The serial number label is located on the right side of the PIM, when the PIM is horizontally oriented (as it would be installed in the router). The exact location may be slightly different on different PIMs, depending on the placement of components on the PIM board.

### ***J6300 Power Supply Serial Number Labels***

The power supplies installed in the J6300 Services Router are field-replaceable. Each power supply has a unique serial number. The serial number label is located on the top of the power supply.

## **Contacting Customer Support**

After you have located the serial numbers of the components you need to return, contact Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) in one of the following ways.

You can contact JTAC 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

- On the Web, using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>
- By telephone:

From the US and Canada: 1-888-314-JTAC

From all other locations: 1-408-745-9500

If contacting JTAC by telephone, enter your 11-digit case number followed by the pound (#) key if this is an existing case, or press the star (\*) key to be routed to the next available support engineer.

### ***Information You Might Need to Supply to JTAC***

When requesting support from JTAC by telephone, be prepared to provide the following information:

- Your existing case number, if you have one
- Details of the failure or problem
- Type of activity being performed on the router when the problem occurred
- Configuration data displayed by one or more `show` commands

### **Return Procedure**

---

If the problem cannot be resolved by the JTAC technician, an RMA number is issued. This number is used to track the returned material at the factory and to return repaired or new components to the customer as needed.



**NOTE:** Do not return any component to Juniper Networks unless you have first obtained an RMA number. Juniper Networks reserves the right to refuse shipments that do not have an RMA. Refused shipments will be returned to the customer via collect freight.

---

For more information about return and repair policies, see the customer support Web page at <http://www.juniper.net/support/guidelines.html>.

For product problems or technical support issues, open a support case using the Case Manager link at <http://www.juniper.net/support/>, or call 1-888-314-JTAC (within the United States) or 1-408-745-9500 (outside the United States).

When you need to return a component, follow this procedure:

1. Determine the part number and serial number of the component. For instructions, see “Locating Component Serial Numbers” on page 179.

2. Obtain a Return Materials Authorization (RMA) number from the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). You can send e-mail or telephone as described above.
3. Provide the following information in your e-mail message or during the telephone call:
  - Part number and serial number of component
  - Your name, organization name, telephone number, and fax number
  - Description of the failure
4. The support representative validates your request and issues an RMA number for return of the component.
5. Pack the router or component for shipment, as described in “Packing a Router or Component for Shipment” on page 183.

## **Packing a Router or Component for Shipment**

---

This section contains the following topics:

- Tools and Parts Required on page 183
- Packing the Services Router for Shipment on page 183
- Packing Components for Shipment on page 184

### ***Tools and Parts Required***

To remove components from the router or the router from a rack, you need the following tools and parts:

- Blank panels to cover empty slots
- Electrostatic bag or antistatic mat, for each component
- Electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding wrist strap
- Flat-blade screwdriver, approximately 1/4 in. (6 mm)
- Phillips (+) screwdrivers, numbers 1 and 2

### ***Packing the Services Router for Shipment***

To pack the router for shipment, follow this procedure:

1. Retrieve the shipping carton and packing materials in which the router was originally shipped. If you do not have these materials, contact your Juniper Networks representative about approved packaging materials.
2. Attach an electrostatic discharge (ESD) grounding strap to your bare wrist and connect the strap to the ESD point on the chassis, or to an outside ESD point if the router is disconnected from earth ground. For more information about ESD, see “Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage” on page 209.
3. On the console or other management device connected to the master Routing Engine, enter CLI operational mode and issue the following command to shut down the router software.

```
user@host> request system halt
```

Wait until a message appears on the console confirming that the operating system has halted. For more information about the command, see the *J-series Services Router Administration Guide*.

4. Shut down power to the router by pressing the power button on the front panel of the router.
5. Disconnect power from the router. For instructions, see “Connecting Power to the Services Router” on page 99.
6. Remove the cables that connect to all external devices. For instructions, see “Removing a PIM Cable” on page 154.
7. Remove all field-replaceable units (FRUs) from the router.
8. If the router is installed on a wall or rack, have one person support the weight of the router, while another person unscrews and removes the mounting screws.
9. Place the router in the shipping carton.
10. Cover the router with an ESD bag, and place the packing foam on top of and around the router.
11. Replace the accessory box on top of the packing foam.
12. Securely tape the box closed.
13. Write the RMA number on the exterior of the box to ensure proper tracking.

## **Packing Components for Shipment**

To pack and ship individual components, follow these guidelines:

- When you return components, make sure they are adequately protected with packing materials and packed so that the pieces are prevented from moving around inside the carton.
- Use the original shipping materials if they are available.

- Place individual boards in electrostatic bags.
- Write the RMA number on the exterior of the box to ensure proper tracking.



**CAUTION:** Do not stack any of the router components.

---



## **Part 4**

# **J-series Requirements and Specifications**

- Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts on page 189
- Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information on page 205





## Chapter 12

# Network Cable Specifications and Connector Pinouts

The network interfaces supported on the router accept different kinds of network cable.

- Serial PIM Cable Specifications on page 189
- RJ-45 Connector Pinout for the Routing Engine (Ethernet) Port on page 198
- Console Port Pinouts on page 198
- E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts on page 199
- E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout on page 202
- ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout on page 202
- ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout on page 202

## Serial PIM Cable Specifications

The 2-port serial PIM uses the cables and connectors summarized in Table 57. Pinouts are detailed in Table 58 through Table 67.

**Table 57: 2-Port Serial PIM Cables and Connectors**

Name	Connector	Connector Hardware	End-to-End Conductors	Pinouts
RS-232 DTE	DB-25 male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	13	Table 58
RS-232 DCE	DB-25 female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	13	Table 59
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE	DC-37 (DB-37) male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	25	Table 60
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE	DC-37 (DB-37) female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	25	Table 61
EIA-530A DTE	DB-25 male	4-40 threaded jackscrews	23	Table 62

**Table 57: 2-Port Serial PIM Cables and Connectors (continued)**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Connector</b>	<b>Connector Hardware</b>	<b>End-to-End Conductors</b>	<b>Pinouts</b>
EIA-530A DCE	DB-25 female	4-40 threaded jacknuts	22	Table 63
V.35 DTE	M/34 male	Standard (Normally included with M/34 connector shell)	18	Table 64
V.35 DCE	M/34 female	Standard (Normally included with M/34 connector shell)	18	Table 65
X.21 DTE	DB-15 male	M3 threaded jackscrews	13	Table 66
X.21 DCE	DB-15 female	M3 threaded jacknuts	13	Table 67

**RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout****Table 58: RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout**

<b>LFH-60 Pin</b>	<b>DB-25 Pin</b>	<b>LFH-60 Pairing</b>	<b>Description</b>
15	1	–	Frame Ground
60	2	–	Transmit Data
1	3	–	Receive Data
48	4	–	Request to Send
37	5	–	Clear to Send
9	6	–	Data Set Ready
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	–	Data Carrier Detect
56	15	–	Transmit Clock
5	17	–	Receive Clock
41	18	–	Local Loopback
33	20	–	Data Terminal Ready
52	24	–	Terminal Clock

**Table 58: RS-232 DTE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
22 to 21	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

**RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout****Table 59: RS-232 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Frame Ground
1	2	–	Transmit Data
60	3	–	Receive Data
37	4	–	Request to Send
48	5	–	Clear to Send
33	6	–	Data Set Ready
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	–	Data Carrier Detect
56	15	–	Transmit Clock
52	17	–	Receive Clock
45	18	–	Local Loopback
9	20	–	Data Terminal Ready
5	24	–	Terminal Clock
22 to 21	–	–	–

**RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout****Table 60: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
60	4	59	Send Data (A)
56	5	55	Send Timing (A)
1	6	2	Receive Data (A)
48	7	47	Request to Send (A)
5	8	6	Receive Timing (A)

**Table 60: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
37	9	38	Clear to Send (A)
41	10	–	Local Loopback
9	11	10	Data Mode (A)
33	12	34	Terminal Ready (A)
13	13	14	Receive Ready (A)
52	17	51	Terminal Timing (A)
36	19	–	Signal Ground
4	20	–	Receive Common
59	22	60	Send Data (B)
55	23	56	Send Timing (B)
2	24	1	Receive Data (B)
47	25	48	Request to Send (B)
6	26	5	Receive Timing (B)
38	27	37	Clear to Send (B)
10	29	9	Data Mode (B)
34	30	33	Terminal Ready (B)
14	31	13	Receiver Ready (B)
51	35	52	Terminal Timing (B)
57	37	–	Send Common
26 to 25	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

**RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout****Table 61: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	4	2	Send Data (A)
56	5	55	Send Timing (A)
60	6	59	Receive Data (A)
37	7	38	Request to Send (A)
52	8	51	Receive Timing (A)
48	9	47	Clear to Send (A)
45	10	–	Local Loopback

**Table 61: RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DC-37 (DB-37) Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
33	11	34	Data Mode (A)
9	12	10	Terminal Ready (A)
13	13	14	Receive Ready (A)
5	17	6	Terminal Timing (A)
36	19	–	Signal Ground
4	20	–	Receive Common
2	22	1	Send Data (B)
55	23	56	Send Timing (B)
59	24	60	Receive Data (B)
38	25	37	Request to Send (B)
51	26	52	Receive Timing (B)
47	27	48	Clear to Send (B)
34	29	33	Data Mode (B)
10	30	9	Terminal Ready (B)
14	31	13	Receiver Ready (B)
6	35	5	Terminal Timing (B)
57	37	–	Send Common
26 to 25	–	–	–

**EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout****Table 62: EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
60	2	59	Transmit Data (A)
1	3	2	Receive Data (A)
48	4	47	Request to Send (A)
37	5	38	Clear to Send (A)
9	6	–	Data Set Ready (A)
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	14	Received Line Signal Detector (A)
6	9	5	Receive Clock (B)

**Table 62: EIA-530A DTE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
14	10	13	Received Line Signal Detector (B)
51	11	52	Terminal Timing (B)
55	12	56	Transmit Clock (B)
38	13	37	Clear to Send (B)
59	14	60	Transmit Data (B)
56	15	55	Transmit Clock (A)
2	16	1	Receive Data (B)
5	17	6	Receive Clock (A)
41	18	–	Local Loopback
47	19	48	Request to Send (B)
33	20	–	Data Terminal Ready (A)
4	23	–	Signal Ground
52	24	51	Terminal Timing (A)
26 to 25	–	–	–
30 to 29	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

## EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 63: EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	2	2	Transmit Data (A)
60	3	59	Receive Data (A)
37	4	38	Request to Send (A)
48	5	47	Clear to Send (A)
33	6	–	Data Set Ready (A)
57	7	–	Signal Ground
13	8	14	Received Line Signal Detector (A)
51	9	52	Receive Clock (B)
14	10	13	Received Line Signal Detector (B)
6	11	5	Terminal Timing (B)

**Table 63: EIA-530A DCE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-25 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
55	12	56	Transmit Clock (B)
47	13	48	Clear to Send (B)
2	14	1	Transmit Data (B)
56	15	55	Transmit Clock (A)
59	16	60	Receive Data (B)
52	17	51	Receive Clock (A)
45	18	–	Local Loopback
38	19	37	Request to Send (B)
9	20	–	Data Terminal Ready (A)
4	23	–	Signal Ground
5	24	6	Terminal Timing (A)
26 to 25	–	–	–
30 to 29	–	–	–

### V.35 DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 64: V.35 DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	A	–	Frame Ground
57	B	–	Signal Ground
48	C	–	Request to Send
37	D	–	Clear to Send
9	E	–	Data Set Ready
13	F	–	Received Line Signal Detector
33	H	–	Data Terminal Ready
41	K	–	Test Mode
60	P	59	Transmit Data (A)
1	R	2	Receive Data (A)
59	S	60	Transmit Data (B)
2	T	1	Receive Data (B)
52	U	51	Terminal Timing (A)
5	V	6	Receive Timing (A)
51	W	52	Terminal Timing (B)
6	X	5	Receive Timing (B)

**Table 64: V.35 DTE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
56	Y	55	Transmit Timing (A)
55	AA	56	Transmit Timing (B)
22 to 21	–	–	–
26 to 25	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

### V.35 DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 65: V.35 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	A	–	Frame Ground
57	B	–	Signal Ground
37	C	–	Request to Send
48	D	–	Clear to Send
33	E	–	Data Set Ready
13	F	–	Received Line Signal Detector
9	H	–	Data Terminal Ready
45	K	–	Test Mode
1	P	2	Transmit Data (A)
60	R	59	Receive Data (A)
2	S	1	Transmit Data (B)
59	T	60	Receive Data (B)
5	U	6	Terminal Timing (A)
52	V	51	Receive Timing (A)
6	W	5	Terminal Timing (B)
51	X	52	Receive Timing (B)
56	Y	55	Transmit Timing (A)
55	AA	56	Transmit Timing (B)



**Table 65: V.35 DCE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	M/34 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
22 to 21	–	–	–
26 to 25	–	–	–

## X.21 DTE Cable Pinout

**Table 66: X.21 DTE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
60	2	59	Transmit Data (A)
48	3	47	Control (A)
1	4	2	Receive (A)
37	5	38	Indicate (A)
5	6	6	Signal Element Timing (A)
57	8	–	Signal Ground
59	9	60	Transmit Data (B)
47	10	48	Control (B)
2	11	1	Receive (B)
38	12	37	Indicate (B)
6	13	5	Signal Element Timing (B)
30 to 29	–	–	–
18 to 17	–	–	–

## X.21 DCE Cable Pinout

**Table 67: X.21 DCE Cable Pinout**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
15	1	–	Shield Ground
1	2	2	Transmit Data (A)
37	3	38	Control (A)
60	4	59	Receive (A)
48	5	47	Indicate (A)
52	6	51	Signal Element Timing (A)

**Table 67: X.21 DCE Cable Pinout (continued)**

LFH-60 Pin	DB-15 Pin	LFH-60 Pairing	Description
57	8	–	Signal Ground
2	9	1	Transmit Data (B)
38	10	37	Control (B)
59	11	60	Receive (B)
47	12	48	Indicate (B)
51	13	52	Signal Element Timing (B)
30 to 29	–	–	–

## RJ-45 Connector Pinout for the Routing Engine (Ethernet) Port

Table 68 describes the RJ-45 connector pinout information.

**Table 68: RJ-45 Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal
1	TX +
2	TX-
3	RX +
4	Termination network
5	Termination network
6	RX-
7	Termination network
8	Termination network

## Console Port Pinouts

The console port on a J-series Services Router has an RJ-45 connector. Table 69 provides RJ-45 console connector pinout information. An RJ-45 cable is supplied with the router.

To connect the console port to an external management device, you need an RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter which is also supplied with the router.

**Table 69: RJ-45 Console Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal	Description
1	Unused	
2	DSR	Data Set Ready
3	RD	Receive Data
4	GND	Signal Ground
5	GND	Signal Ground
6	TD	Transmit Data
7	DTR	Data Terminal Ready
8	Unused	

Table 70 describes the DB-9 connector pinouts.

**Table 70: DB-9 Console Connector Pinout**

Pin	Signal	Direction	Description
1	DCD	< –	Carrier Detect
2	RxD	< –	Receive Data
3	TxD	– >	Transmit Data
4	DTR	– >	Data Terminal Ready
5	Ground	—	Signal Ground
6	DSR	< –	Data Set Ready
7	RTS	– >	Request To Send
8	CTS	< –	Clear To Send
9	RING	< –	Ring Indicator

## E1 and T1 RJ-48 Cable Pinouts

The E1 and T1 PIMs use an RJ-48 cable, which is not supplied with the PIM.



**CAUTION:** To maintain agency approvals, use only a properly constructed, shielded cable.

Table 71, Table 72, Table 73, and Table 74 describe the RJ-48 connector pinouts.

**Table 71: RJ-48 Connector to RJ-48 Connector (Straight) Pinout**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data Numbering Form)</b>	<b>RJ-48 Pin (Data Numbering Form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	1	RX, Ring, -
2	2	RX, Tip, +
4	4	TX, Ring, -
5	5	TX, Tip, +
3	3	Shield/Return/Ground
6	6	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect

**Table 72: RJ-48 Connector to RJ-48 Connector (Crossover) Pinout**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>RJ-48 Pin (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	4	RX/Ring/- <--> TX/Ring/-
2	5	RX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
4	1	TX/Ring/- <--> RX/Ring/-
5	2	TX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
3	3	Shield/Return/Ground
6	6	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect

**Table 73: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Straight) Pinout**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>DB-15 Pin (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	11	RX/Ring/- <--> RX/Ring/-
2	3	RX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
4	9	TX/Ring/- <--> TX/Ring/-
5	1	TX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
3	4	Shield/Return/Ground
6	2	Shield/Return/Ground

**Table 73: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Straight) Pinout (continued)**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>DB-15 Pin (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect
9	No connect	No connect
10	No connect	No connect
11	No connect	No connect
12	No connect	No connect
13	No connect	No connect
14	No connect	No connect
15	No connect	No connect

**Table 74: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Crossover) Pinout**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>DB-15 Pin (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	9	RX/Ring/- <--> TX/Ring/-
2	1	RX/Tip/+ <--> TX/Tip/+
4	11	TX/Ring/- <--> RX/Ring/-
5	3	TX/Tip/+ <--> RX/Tip/+
3	4	Shield/Return/Ground
6	2	Shield/Return/Ground
7	No connect	No connect
8	No connect	No connect
9	No connect	No connect
10	No connect	No connect
11	No connect	No connect
12	No connect	No connect
13	No connect	No connect

**Table 74: RJ-48 Connector to DB-15 Connector (Crossover) Pinout (continued)**

<b>RJ-48 Pin (on T1/E1 PIM) (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>DB-15 Pin (Data numbering form)</b>	<b>Signal</b>
14	No connect	No connect
15	No connect	No connect

## E3 and T3 BNC Connector Pinout

The E3 and T3 PIMs each use two BNC connectors—one for transmitting data (TX) and one for receiving data (RX).

## ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout

The 1-port ADSL Annex A and Annex B PIMs use an RJ-11 cable, which is not supplied with the PIMs. The 2-port G.SHDSL Annex A and Annex B PIM also uses an RJ-11 cable, which is not supplied with the PIMs. Table 75 describes the RJ-11 connector pinout.

**Table 75: ADSL and G.SHDSL RJ-11 Connector Pinout**

<b>Pin</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	No connect
2	No connect
3	RJ P –Tip
4	RJ N –Ring
5	No connect
6	No connect

## ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout

The 1-port and 4-port ISDN PIMs use an RJ-45 cable, which is not supplied with the PIMs. Table 76 describes the RJ-45 connector pinout.

**Table 76: ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout**

<b>Pin</b>	<b>Signal</b>
1	No connect
2	No connect

**Table 76: ISDN RJ-45 Connector Pinout (continued)**

<b>Pin</b>	<b>Signal</b>
3	RJ_SX_P
4	RJ_SR_P
5	RJ_SR_N
6	RJ_SX_N
7	No connect
8	No connect
9	Shielded
10	Shielded 2





## Chapter 13

# Safety and Regulatory Compliance Information

To install and use the Services Router safely, follow proper safety procedures. This chapter discusses the following safety and regulatory compliance information:

- Definition of Safety Warning Levels on page 205
- Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 207
- Agency Approvals on page 244
- Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements on page 245
- Product Reclamation and Recycling Program on page 248

### Definition of Safety Warning Levels

---

This manual uses the following three levels of safety warnings:



**NOTE:** You might find this information helpful in a particular situation, or might otherwise overlook it.

---



**CAUTION:** You need to observe the specified guidelines to avoid minor injury or discomfort to you, or severe damage to the Services Router.

---



**WARNING:** This symbol means danger. You are in a situation that could cause bodily injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Dit waarschuwingssymbool betekent gevaar. U verkeert in een situatie die lichamelijk letsel kan veroorzaken. Voordat u aan enige apparatuur gaat werken, dient u zich bewust te zijn van de bij elektrische schakelingen betrokken risico's en dient u op de hoogte te zijn van standaard maatregelen om ongelukken te voorkomen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tämä varoitusmerkki merkitsee vaaraa. Olet tilanteessa, joka voi johtaa ruumiinvammaan. Ennen kuin työskentelet minkään laitteiston parissa, ota selvää sähkökytkentöihin liittyvistä vaaroista ja tavanomaisista onnettomuuksien ehkäisykeinoista.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Ce symbole d'avertissement indique un danger. Vous vous trouvez dans une situation pouvant causer des blessures ou des dommages corporels. Avant de travailler sur un équipement, soyez conscient des dangers posés par les circuits électriques et familiarisez-vous avec les procédures couramment utilisées pour éviter les accidents.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Dieses Warnsymbol bedeutet Gefahr. Sie befinden sich in einer Situation, die zu einer Körperverletzung führen könnte. Bevor Sie mit der Arbeit an irgendeinem Gerät beginnen, seien Sie sich der mit elektrischen Stromkreisen verbundenen Gefahren und der Standardpraktiken zur Vermeidung von Unfällen bewußt.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questo simbolo di avvertenza indica un pericolo. La situazione potrebbe causare infortuni alle persone. Prima di lavorare su qualsiasi apparecchiatura, occorre conoscere i pericoli relativi ai circuiti elettrici ed essere al corrente delle pratiche standard per la prevenzione di incidenti.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Dette varselsymbolet betyr fare. Du befinner deg i en situasjon som kan føre til personskade. Før du utfører arbeid på utstyr, må du være oppmerksom på de faremomentene som elektriske kretser innebærer, samt gjøre deg kjent med vanlig praksis når det gjelder å unngå ulykker.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Este símbolo de aviso indica perigo. Encontra-se numa situação que lhe poderá causar danos físicos. Antes de começar a trabalhar com qualquer equipamento, familiarize-se com os perigos relacionados com circuitos eléctricos, e com quaisquer práticas comuns que possam prevenir possíveis acidentes.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Este símbolo de aviso significa peligro. Existe riesgo para su integridad física. Antes de manipular cualquier equipo, considerar los riesgos que entraña la corriente eléctrica y familiarizarse con los procedimientos estándar de prevención de accidentes.



**WARNING: Varning!** Denna varningssymbol signalerar fara. Du befinner dig i en situation som kan leda till personskada. Innan du utför arbete på någon utrustning måste du vara medveten om farorna med elkretsar och känna till vanligt förfarande för att förebygga skador.

## Safety Guidelines and Warnings

This section lists the following safety guidelines and warnings for installing, operating, and maintaining a Services Router:

- General Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 207
- Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 210
- Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 225
- Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 231
- Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings on page 235

## General Safety Guidelines and Warnings

The following guidelines help ensure your safety and protect the Services Router from damage. The list of guidelines might not address all potentially hazardous situations in your working environment, so be alert and exercise good judgment at all times.

- Perform only the procedures explicitly described in this manual. Make sure that only authorized service personnel perform other system services.

- Keep the area around the chassis clear and free from dust before, during, and after installation.
- Keep tools away from areas where people could trip over them while walking.
- Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry, such as rings, bracelets, or chains, which could become caught in the chassis.
- Wear safety glasses if you are working under any conditions that could be hazardous to your eyes.
- Do not perform any actions that create a potential hazard to people or make the equipment unsafe.
- Never attempt to lift an object that is too heavy for one person to handle.
- Never install or manipulate wiring during electrical storms.
- Never install electrical jacks in wet locations unless the jacks are specifically designed for wet environments.
- Operate the Services Router only when it is properly grounded.
- The separate protective earthing terminal provided on this product shall be permanently connected to earth.
- Replace fuses only with fuses of the same type and rating.
- Do not open or remove chassis covers or sheet metal parts unless instructions are provided in this manual. Such an action could cause severe electrical shock.
- Do not push or force any objects through any opening in the chassis frame. Such an action could result in electrical shock or fire.
- Avoid spilling liquid onto the Services Router chassis or onto any Services Router component. Such an action could cause electrical shock or damage the Services Router.
- Avoid touching uninsulated electrical wires or terminals that have not been disconnected from their power source. Such an action could cause electrical shock.

In addition, observe the warnings and guidelines in the following sections.

### Qualified Personnel Warning



**WARNING:** Only trained and qualified personnel should install or replace the Services Router.

**Waarschuwing** Installatie en reparaties mogen uitsluitend door getraind en bevoegd personeel uitgevoerd worden.

**Varoitus** Ainoastaan koulutettu ja pätevä henkilökunta saa asentaa tai vaihtaa tämän laitteen.

**Attention** Tout installation ou remplacement de l'appareil doit être réalisé par du personnel qualifié et compétent.

**Warnung** Gerät nur von geschultem, qualifiziertem Personal installieren oder auswechseln lassen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Solo personale addestrato e qualificato deve essere autorizzato ad installare o sostituire questo apparecchio.

**Advarsel** Kun kvalifisert personell med riktig opplæring bør montere eller bytte ut dette utstyret.

**Aviso** Este equipamento deverá ser instalado ou substituído apenas por pessoal devidamente treinado e qualificado.

**¡Atención!** Estos equipos deben ser instalados y reemplazados exclusivamente por personal técnico adecuadamente preparado y capacitado.

**Warning!** Denna utrustning ska endast installeras och bytas ut av utbildad och kvalificerad personal.

---

## Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage

Many Services Router hardware components are sensitive to damage from static electricity. Some components can be impaired by voltages as low as 30 V. You can easily generate potentially damaging static voltages whenever you handle plastic or foam packing material or if you move components across plastic or carpets. Observe the following guidelines to minimize the potential for electrostatic discharge (ESD) damage, which can cause intermittent or complete component failures:

- Always use an ESD wrist strap or ankle strap, and make sure that it is in direct contact with your skin.
- 



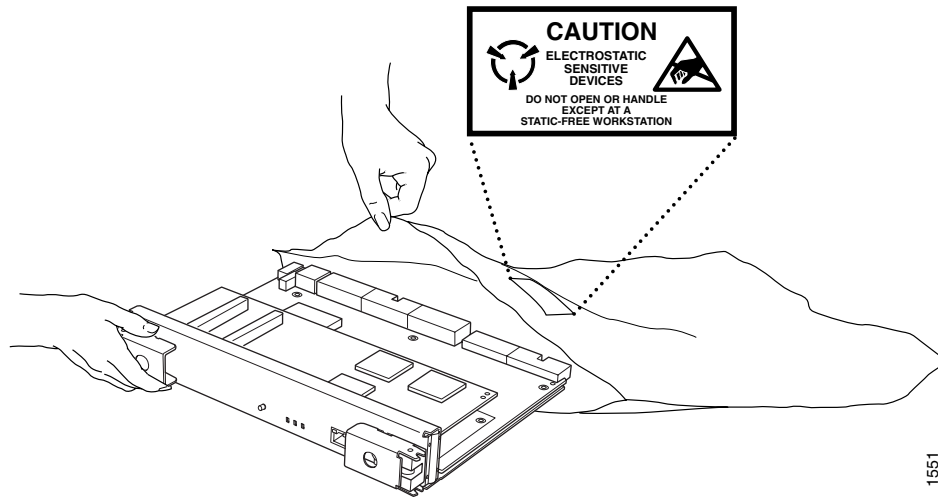
**CAUTION:** For safety, periodically check the resistance value of the ESD strap. The measurement should be in the range of 1 to 10 Mohms.

---

- When handling any component that is removed from the chassis, make sure the equipment end of your ESD strap is attached to one of the electrostatic discharge points on the chassis, which are shown in Figure 2 and Figure 3 for the J2300 chassis and in Figure 7, Figure 8, and Figure 9 for the J4300 chassis and J6300 chassis.

- Avoid contact between the component and your clothing. ESD voltages emitted from clothing can still damage components.
- When removing or installing a component, always place it component-side up on an antistatic surface, in an antistatic card rack, or in an electrostatic bag (see Figure 72). If you are returning a component, place it in an electrostatic bag before packing it.

**Figure 72: Place a Component into an Electrostatic Bag**



## **Electrical Safety Guidelines and Warnings**

When working on equipment powered by electricity, follow the guidelines described in the following sections:

- General Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 211
- AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 212
- DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines on page 212
- Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies on page 213
- DC Power Disconnection Warning on page 213
- DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning on page 215
- DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning on page 215
- DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning on page 217
- Grounded Equipment Warning on page 218

- Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden on page 219
- In Case of Electrical Accident on page 219
- Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning on page 219
- Power Disconnection Warning on page 221
- TN Power Warning on page 222
- Telecommunication Line Cord Warning on page 223

### **General Electrical Safety Guidelines**

- Install the Services Router in compliance with the following local, national, or international electrical codes:
  - United States—National Fire Protection Association (NFPA 70), United States National Electrical Code.
  - Canada—Canadian Electrical Code, Part 1, CSA C22.1.
  - Other countries—International Electromechanical Commission (IEC) 60364, Part 1 through Part 7.
  - Evaluated to the TN power system.
- Locate the emergency power-off switch for the room in which you are working so that if an electrical accident occurs, you can quickly turn off the power.
- Do not work alone if potentially hazardous conditions exist anywhere in your workspace.
- Never assume that power is disconnected from a circuit. Always check the circuit before starting to work.
- Carefully look for possible hazards in your work area, such as moist floors, ungrounded power extension cords, and missing safety grounds.
- Operate the Services Router within marked electrical ratings and product usage instructions.
- For the Services Router and peripheral equipment to function safely and correctly, use the cables and connectors specified for the attached peripheral equipment, and make certain they are in good condition.

Many Services Router components can be removed and replaced without powering down or disconnecting power to the Services Router, as detailed in elsewhere in this manual. Never install equipment if it appears damaged.

## AC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines

The following electrical safety guidelines apply to AC-powered routers:

- AC-powered routers are shipped with a three-wire electrical cord with a grounding-type plug that fits only a grounding-type power outlet. Do not circumvent this safety feature. Equipment grounding should comply with local and national electrical codes.
- You must provide an external Listed circuit breaker rated minimum 15 A in the building installation.
- The power cord serves as the main disconnecting device. The socket outlet must be near the router and be easily accessible.
- The cores in the mains lead are colored in accordance with the following code:
  - Green and yellow—Earth
  - Blue—Neutral
  - Brown—Live
- When a router is equipped with two AC power supplies, both power cords (one for each power supply) must be unplugged to completely disconnect power to the router.
- Note the following warnings printed on the AC power supply faceplate:
  - To completely de-energize the system disconnect maximum of 2 power cordsets.
  - Apparaten skall anslutas till jordat uttag när den ansluts till ett nätverk. [Swedish]

## DC Power Electrical Safety Guidelines

The following electrical safety guidelines apply to a DC-powered router:

- A DC-powered router is equipped with a DC terminal block that is rated for the power requirements of a maximally configured router. To supply sufficient power, terminate the DC input wiring on a facility DC source capable of supplying at least 8 A @ –48 VDC. Incorporate an easily accessible disconnect device into the facility wiring. Be sure to connect the ground wire or conduit to a solid office (earth) ground. A closed loop ring is recommended for terminating the ground conductor at the ground stud.
- Run two wires from the circuit breaker box to a source of 48 VDC.
- In the United States, a restricted access area is one in accordance with Articles 110-16, 110-17, and 110-18 of the National Electrical Code ANSI/NFPA 70.





**NOTE:** Primary overcurrent protection is provided by the building circuit breaker. This breaker should protect against excess currents, short circuits, and earth faults in accordance with NEC ANSI/NFPA70.

- Ensure that the polarity of the DC input wiring is correct. Under certain conditions, connections with reversed polarity might trip the primary circuit breaker or damage the equipment.
- For personal safety, connect the green and yellow wire to safety (earth) ground at both the router and the supply side of the DC wiring.
- The marked input voltage of –48 VDC for a DC-powered router is the nominal voltage associated with the battery circuit, and any higher voltages are only to be associated with float voltages for the charging function.
- Because the router is a positive ground system, you must connect the positive lead to the terminal labeled RTN, the negative lead to the terminal labeled –48 VDC, and the earth ground to the chassis grounding points.

### Power Sources for Redundant Power Supplies

If your J6300 Services Router includes an optional redundant DC power supply, connect each of the two power supplies to different input power sources. Failure to do so makes the router susceptible to total power failure if one of the power supplies fails.



### DC Power Disconnection Warning



**WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit. To ensure that all power is off, locate the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit, switch the circuit breaker to the OFF position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the OFF position.

**Waarschuwing** Voordat u een van de onderstaande procedures uitvoert, dient u te controleren of de stroom naar het gelijkstroom circuit uitgeschakeld is. Om u ervan te verzekeren dat alle stroom UIT is geschakeld, kiest u op het schakelbord de stroomverbreker die het gelijkstroom circuit bedient, draait de stroomverbreker naar de UIT positie en plakt de schakelaarhendel van de stroomverbreker met plakband in de UIT positie vast.

**Varoitus** Varmista, että tasavirtapiirissä ei ole virtaa ennen seuraavien toimenpiteiden suorittamista. Varmistaaksesi, että virta on KATKAISTU täysin, paikanna tasavirrasta huolehtivassa kojetaulussa sijaitseva suojakytkin, käännä suojakytkin KATKAISTU-asentoon ja teippaa suojakytkimen varsi niin, että se pysyy KATKAISTU-asennossa.

**Attention** Avant de pratiquer l'une quelconque des procédures ci-dessous, vérifier que le circuit en courant continu n'est plus sous tension. Pour en être sûr, localiser le disjoncteur situé sur le panneau de service du circuit en courant continu, placer le disjoncteur en position fermée (OFF) et, à l'aide d'un ruban adhésif, bloquer la poignée du disjoncteur en position OFF.

**Warnung** Vor Ausführung der folgenden Vorgänge ist sicherzustellen, daß die Gleichstromschaltung keinen Strom erhält. Um sicherzustellen, daß sämtlicher Strom abgestellt ist, machen Sie auf der Schalttafel den Unterbrecher für die Gleichstromschaltung ausfindig, stellen Sie den Unterbrecher auf AUS, und kleben Sie den Schaltergriff des Unterbrechers mit Klebeband in der AUS-Stellung fest.

**Avvertenza** Prima di svolgere una qualsiasi delle procedure seguenti, verificare che il circuito CC non sia alimentato. Per verificare che tutta l'alimentazione sia scollegata (OFF), individuare l'interruttore automatico sul quadro strumenti che alimenta il circuito CC, mettere l'interruttore in posizione OFF e fissarlo con nastro adesivo in tale posizione.

**Advarsel** Før noen av disse prosedyrene utføres, kontroller at strømmen er frakoblet likestrømkretsen. Sørg for at all strøm er slått AV. Dette gjøres ved å lokalisere strømbryteren på brytertavlen som betjener likestrømkretsen, slå strømbryteren AV og teipe bryterhåndtaket på strømbryteren i AV-stilling.

**Aviso** Antes de executar um dos seguintes procedimentos, certifique-se que desligou a fonte de alimentação de energia do circuito de corrente contínua. Para se assegurar que toda a corrente foi DESLIGADA, localize o disjuntor no painel que serve o circuito de corrente contínua e coloque-o na posição OFF (Desligado), segurando nessa posição a manivela do interruptor do disjuntor com fita isoladora.

**¡Atención!** Antes de proceder con los siguientes pasos, comprobar que la alimentación del circuito de corriente continua (CC) esté cortada (OFF). Para asegurarse de que toda la alimentación esté cortada (OFF), localizar el interruptor automático en el panel que alimenta al circuito de corriente continua, cambiar el interruptor automático a la posición de Apagado (OFF), y sujetar con cinta la palanca del interruptor automático en posición de Apagado (OFF).

**Varning!** Innan du utför någon av följande procedurer måste du kontrollera att strömförsörjningen till likströmskretsen är bruten. Kontrollera att all strömförsörjning är BRUTEN genom att slå AV det överspänningsskydd som skyddar likströmskretsen och tejsa fast överspänningsskyddets omkopplare i FRÅN-läget.

## DC Power Grounding Requirements and Warning

An insulated grounding conductor that is identical in size to the grounded and ungrounded branch circuit supply conductors, but is identifiable by green and yellow stripes, is installed as part of the branch circuit that supplies the unit. The grounding conductor is a separately derived system at the supply transformer or motor generator set.

For further information, see “Chassis Grounding” on page 99 and “DC Power, Connection, and Power Cable Specifications” on page 88.



**WARNING:** When installing the router, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.

**Waarschuwing** Bij de installatie van het toestel moet de aardverbinding altijd het eerste worden gemaakt en het laatste worden losgemaakt.

**Varoitus** Laitetta asennettaessa on maahan yhdistäminen aina tehtävä ensiksi ja maadoituksen irti kytkeminen viimeiseksi.

**Attention** Lors de l'installation de l'appareil, la mise à la terre doit toujours être connectée en premier et déconnectée en dernier.

**Warnung** Der Erdanschluß muß bei der Installation der Einheit immer zuerst hergestellt und zuletzt abgetrennt werden.

**Avvertenza** In fase di installazione dell'unità, eseguire sempre per primo il collegamento a massa e disconnetterlo per ultimo.

**Advarsel** Når enheten installeres, må jordledningen alltid tilkobles først og frakobles sist.

**Aviso** Ao instalar a unidade, a ligação à terra deverá ser sempre a primeira a ser ligada, e a última a ser desligada.

**¡Atención!** Al instalar el equipo, conectar la tierra la primera y desconectarla la última.

**Varning!** Vid installation av enheten måste jordledningen alltid anslutas först och kopplas bort sist.

---

## DC Power Wiring Sequence Warning



**WARNING:** Wire the DC power supply using the appropriate lugs. When connecting power, the proper wiring sequence is ground to ground, + RTN to + RTN, then -48 V to -48 V. When disconnecting power, the proper wiring sequence is -48 V to -48 V,

+ RTN to + RTN, then ground to ground. Note that the ground wire should always be connected first and disconnected last.

**Waarschuwing** De juiste bedradingsvolgorde verbonden is aarde naar aarde, + RTN naar + RTN, en -48 V naar - 48 V. De juiste bedradingsvolgorde losgemaakt is en -48 V naar - 48 V, + RTN naar + RTN, aarde naar aarde.

**Varoitus** Oikea yhdistettävä kytkentäjärjestys on maajohto maajohtoon, + RTN varten + RTN, -48 V varten - 48 V. Oikea irrotettava kytkentäjärjestys on -48 V varten - 48 V, + RTN varten + RTN, maajohto maajohtoon.

**Attention** Câblez l’approvisionnement d’alimentation CC En utilisant les crochets appropriés à l’extrémité de câblage. En reliant la puissance, l’ordre approprié de câblage est rectifié pour rectifier, + RTN à + RTN, puis -48 V à -48 V. En débranchant la puissance, l’ordre approprié de câblage est -48 V à -48 V, + RTN à + RTN, a alors rectifié pour rectifier. Notez que le fil de masse devrait toujours être relié d’abord et débranché pour la dernière fois. Notez que le fil de masse devrait toujours être relié d’abord et débranché pour la dernière fois.

**Warnung** Verdrahten Sie die Gleichstrom-Versorgung mit den passenden Ansätzen am Verdrahtung Ende. Wenn man Energie anschließt, wird die korrekte Verdrahtung. Reihenfolge gerieben, um, + RTN zu + RTN, dann -48 V bis -48 V zu reiben. Wenn sie Energie trennt, ist die korrekte Verdrahtung Reihenfolge -48 V bis -48 V, + RTN zu + RTN, rieb dann, um zu reiben. Beachten Sie, daß der Erdungsdraht immer zuerst angeschlossen werden und zuletzt getrennt werden sollte.

**Avvertenza** Mostra la morsettiera dell alimentatore CC. Cablare l’alimentatore CC usando i connettori adatti all’estremità del cablaggio, come illustrato. La corretta sequenza di cablaggio è da massa a massa, da positivo a positivo (da linea ad L) e da negativo a negativo (da neutro a N). Tenere presente che il filo di massa deve sempre venire collegato per primo e scollegato per ultimo.

**Advarsel** Riktig tilkoples tilkoplingssekvens er jord til jord, + RTN til + RTN, -48 V til - 48 V. Riktig frakoples tilkoplingssekvens er -48 V til - 48 V, + RTN til + RTN, jord til jord.

**Aviso** Ate con alambre la fuente de potencia cc Usando los terminales apropiados en el extremo del cableado. Al conectar potencia, la secuencia apropiada del cableado se muele para moler, + RTN a + RTN, entonces -48 V a -48 V. Al desconectar potencia, la secuencia apropiada del cableado es -48 V a -48 V, + RTN a + RTN, entonces molió para moler. Observe que el alambre de tierra se debe conectar siempre primero y desconectar por último. Observe que el alambre de tierra se debe conectar siempre primero y desconectar por último.

**¡Atención!** Wire a fonte de alimentação de DC Usando os talões apropriados na extremidade da fiação. Ao conectar a potência, a seqüência apropriada da fiação é moída para moer, + RTN a + RTN, então -48 V a -48 V. Ao desconectar a potência, a seqüência apropriada da fiação é -48 V a -48 V, + RTN a + RTN, moeu então para moer. Anote que o fio à terra deve sempre ser conectado primeiramente e desconectado por último. Anote que o fio à terra deve sempre ser conectado primeiramente e desconectado por último.

**Warning!** Korrekt kopplingssekvens ar jord till jord, + RTN till + RTN, -48 V till -48 V. Korrekt kopplas kopplingssekvens ar -48 V till -48 V, + RTN till + RTN, jord till jord.

---

## DC Power Wiring Terminations Warning

---



**WARNING:** When stranded wiring is required, use approved wiring terminations, such as closed-loop or spade-type with upturned lugs. These terminations should be the appropriate size for the wires and should clamp both the insulation and conductor.

**Waarschuwing** Wanneer geslagen bedrading vereist is, dient u bedrading te gebruiken die voorzien is van goedgekeurde aansluitingspunten, zoals het gesloten-lus type of het grijperschop type waarbij de aansluitpunten omhoog wijzen. Deze aansluitpunten dienen de juiste maat voor de draden te hebben en dienen zowel de isolatie als de geleider vast te klemmen.

**Varoitus** Jos säikeellinen johdin on tarpeen, käytä hyväksyttyä johdinliitintä, esimerkiksi suljettua silmukkaa tai kourumaista liitintä, jossa on ylöspäin käännetyt kiinnityskorvat. Tällaisten liitäntöjen tulee olla kooltaan johtimiin sopivia ja niiden tulee puristaa yhteen sekä eristeen että johdinosan.

**Attention** Quand des fils torsadés sont nécessaires, utiliser des douilles terminales homologuées telles que celles à circuit fermé ou du type à plage ouverte avec cosses rebroussées. Ces douilles terminales doivent être de la taille qui convient aux fils et doivent être refermées sur la gaine isolante et sur le conducteur.

**Warnung** Wenn Litzenverdrahtung erforderlich ist, sind zugelassene Verdrahtungsabschlüsse, z.B. für einen geschlossenen Regelkreis oder gabelförmig, mit nach oben gerichteten Kabelschuhen zu verwenden. Diese Abschlüsse sollten die angemessene Größe für die Drähte haben und sowohl die Isolierung als auch den Leiter festklemmen.

**Avvertenza** Quando occorre usare trecce, usare connettori omologati, come quelli a occhiello o a forcilla con linguette rivolte verso l'alto. I connettori devono avere la misura adatta per il cablaggio e devono serrare sia l'isolante che il conduttore.

**Advarsel** Hvis det er nødvendig med flertrådede ledninger, brukes godkjente ledningsavslutninger, som for eksempel lukket sløyfe eller spadetype med oppoverbøyde kabelsko. Disse avslutningene skal ha riktig størrelse i forhold til ledningene, og skal klemme sammen både isolasjonen og lederen.

**Aviso** Quando forem requeridas montagens de instalação eléctrica de cabo torcido, use terminações de cabo aprovadas, tais como, terminações de cabo em circuito fechado e planas com terminais de orelha voltados para cima. Estas terminações de cabo deverão ser do tamanho apropriado para os respectivos cabos, e deverão prender simultaneamente o isolamento e o fio condutor.

**¡Atención!** Cuando se necesite hilo trenzado, utilizar terminales para cables homologados, tales como las de tipo "bucle cerrado" o "espada", con las lengüetas de conexión vueltas hacia arriba. Estos terminales deberán ser del tamaño apropiado para los cables que se utilicen, y tendrán que sujetar tanto el aislante como el conductor.

**Varning!** När flertrådiga ledningar krävs måste godkända ledningskontakter användas, t.ex. kabelsko av sluten eller öppen typ med uppåtvänd tapp. Storleken på dessa kontakter måste vara avpassad till ledningarna och måste kunna hålla både isoleringen och ledaren fastklämda.

---

## Grounded Equipment Warning

---



**WARNING:** The router is intended to be grounded. Ensure that the router is connected to earth ground during normal use.

**Waarschuwing** Deze apparatuur hoort geaard te worden. Zorg dat de host-computer tijdens normaal gebruik met aarde is verbonden.

**Varoitus** Tämä laitteisto on tarkoitettu maadoitettavaksi. Varmista, että isäntälaitte on yhdistetty maahan normaalikäytön aikana.

**Attention** Cet équipement doit être relié à la terre. S'assurer que l'appareil hôte est relié à la terre lors de l'utilisation normale.

**Warnung** Dieses Gerät muß geerdet werden. Stellen Sie sicher, daß das Host-Gerät während des normalen Betriebs an Erde gelegt ist.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questa apparecchiatura deve essere collegata a massa. Accertarsi che il dispositivo host sia collegato alla massa di terra durante il normale utilizzo.

**Advarsel** Dette utstyret skal jordes. Forviss deg om vertsterminalen er jordet ved normalt bruk.

**Aviso** Este equipamento deverá estar ligado à terra. Certifique-se que o host se encontra ligado à terra durante a sua utilização normal.

**¡Atención!** Este equipo debe conectarse a tierra. Asegurarse de que el equipo principal esté conectado a tierra durante el uso normal.

**Varning!** Denna utrustning är avsedd att jordas. Se till att värdenheten är jordad vid normal användning.

---

## Warning Statement for Norway and Sweden

---



**WARNING:** The equipment must be connected to an earthed mains socket-outlet.

**Advarsel** Apparatet skal kobles til en jordet stikkontakt.

**Varning!** Apparaten skall anslutas till jordat nätuttag.

---

## In Case of Electrical Accident

If an electrical accident results in an injury, take the following actions in this order:

1. Use caution. Be aware of potentially hazardous conditions that could cause further injury.
2. Disconnect power from the Services Router.
3. If possible, send another person to get medical aid. Otherwise, assess the condition of the victim, then call for help.

## Multiple Power Supplies Disconnection Warning

---



**WARNING:** The J6300 Services Router has more than one power supply connection. All connections must be removed completely to remove power from the unit completely.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Deze J6300 eenheid heeft meer dan één stroomtoevoerverbinding; alle verbindingen moeten volledig worden verwijderd om de stroom van deze eenheid volledig te verwijderen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tässä laitteessa on useampia virtalähdekytkentöjä. Kaikki kytkennät on irrotettava kokonaan, jotta virta poistettaisiin täysin laitteesta.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Cette J6300 unité est équipée de plusieurs raccordements d'alimentation. Pour supprimer tout courant électrique de l'unité, tous les cordons d'alimentation doivent être débranchés.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Diese J6300 Einheit verfügt über mehr als einen Stromanschluß; um Strom gänzlich von der Einheit fernzuhalten, müssen alle Stromzufuhren abgetrennt sein.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Questa J6300 unità ha più di una connessione per alimentatore elettrico; tutte le connessioni devono essere completamente rimosse per togliere l'elettricità dall'unità.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Denne J6300 enheten har mer enn én strømtilkobling. Alle tilkoblinger må kobles helt fra for å eliminere strøm fra enheten.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Este J6300 dispositivo possui mais do que uma conexão de fonte de alimentação de energia; para poder remover a fonte de alimentação de energia, deverão ser desconectadas todas as conexões existentes.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Esta J6300 unidad tiene más de una conexión de suministros de alimentación; para eliminar la alimentación por completo, deben desconectarse completamente todas las conexiones.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Denna J6300 enhet har mer än en strömförsörjningsanslutning; alla anslutningar måste vara helt avlägsnade innan strömtillförseln till enheten är fullständigt bruten.

---



## Power Disconnection Warning



**WARNING:** Before working on the router or near power supplies, unplug the power cord from an AC router.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Voordat u aan een frame of in de nabijheid van voedingen werkt, dient u bij wisselstroom toestellen de stekker van het netsnoer uit het stopcontact te halen.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kytke irti vaihtovirtalaitteiden virtajohto, ennen kuin teet mitään asennuspohjalle tai työskentelet virtalähteiden läheisyydessä.



**WARNING: Attention** Avant de travailler sur un châssis ou à proximité d'une alimentation électrique, débrancher le cordon d'alimentation des unités en courant alternatif.



**WARNING: Warnung** Bevor Sie an einem Chassis oder in der Nähe von Netzgeräten arbeiten, ziehen Sie bei Wechselstromeinheiten das Netzkabel ab bzw.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prima di lavorare su un telaio o intorno ad alimentatori, scollegare il cavo di alimentazione sulle unità CA.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Før det utføres arbeid på kabinettet eller det arbeides i nærheten av strømforsyningsenheter, skal strømfledningen trekkes ut på vekselstrømsenheter.



**WARNING: Aviso** Antes de trabalhar num chassis, ou antes de trabalhar perto de unidades de fornecimento de energia, desligue o cabo de alimentação nas unidades de corrente alternada.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Antes de manipular el chasis de un equipo o trabajar cerca de una fuente de alimentación, desenchufar el cable de alimentación en los equipos de corriente alterna (CA).

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Innan du arbetar med ett chassi eller nära strömförsörjningsenheter skall du för växelströmsenheter dra ur nätsladden.

---

### TN Power Warning

---



**WARNING:** The router is designed to work with a TN power system.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Het apparaat is ontworpen om te functioneren met TN energiesystemen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kojie on suunniteltu toimimaan TN-sähkövoimajärjestelmien yhteydessä.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Ce dispositif a été conçu pour fonctionner avec des systèmes d'alimentation TN.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Das Gerät ist für die Verwendung mit TN-Stromsystemen ausgelegt.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Il dispositivo è stato progettato per l'uso con sistemi di alimentazione TN.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Utstyret er utfomet til bruk med TN-strømsystemer.



**WARNING: Aviso** O dispositivo foi criado para operar com sistemas de corrente TN.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** El equipo está diseñado para trabajar con sistemas de alimentación tipo TN.



**WARNING: Varning!** Enheten är konstruerad för användning tillsammans med elkraftssystem av TN-typ.

### Telecommunication Line Cord Warning



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG or larger UL-listed or CSA-certified telecommunication line cord.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om brandgevaar te reduceren, dient slechts telecommunicatielijnsnoer nr. 26 AWG of groter gebruikt te worden.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tulipalovaaran vähentämiseksi käytä ainoastaan nro 26 AWG-tai paksumpaa tietoliikennejohdinta.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Pour réduire les risques d'incendie, n'utiliser que des cordons de lignes de télécommunications de type AWG n° 26 ou plus larges.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Zur Reduzierung der Feuergefahr eine Fernmeldeleitungsschnur der Größe 26 AWG oder größer verwenden.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per ridurre il rischio di incendio, usare solo un cavo per linea di telecomunicazioni di sezione 0,12 mm<sup>2</sup> (26 AWG) o maggiore.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Bruk kun AWG nr. 26 eller telekommunikasjonsledninger med større dimensjon for å redusere faren for brann.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Para reduzir o risco de incêndio, utilize apenas terminais de fio de telecomunicações N°. 26 AWG ou superiores.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para reducir el riesgo de incendios, usar sólo líneas de telecomunicaciones de calibre No. 26 AWG o más gruesas.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** För att minska brandrisken skall endast Nr. 26 AWG eller större telekommunikationsledning användas.

---

## Installation Safety Guidelines and Warnings

Observe the following guidelines and warnings before and during Services Router installation:

- Chassis Lifting Guidelines on page 225
- Installation Instructions Warning on page 225
- Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings on page 226
- Ramp Warning on page 230

### Chassis Lifting Guidelines

The weight of a fully configured chassis is approximately 12 lbs (5.4 kg) for a J2300 Services Router, 21 lbs (9.5 kg) for a J4300 Services Router, and 24 lb (10.9 kg) for a J6300 Services Router. Observe the following guidelines for lifting and moving a Services Router:

- Before moving the Services Router, read the guidelines in “Preparing for Router Installation” on page 81 to verify that the intended site meets the specified power, environmental, and clearance requirements.
- Before lifting or moving the Services Router, disconnect all external cables.
- As when lifting any heavy object, lift most of the weight with your legs rather than your back. Keep your knees bent and your back relatively straight and avoid twisting your body as you lift. Balance the load evenly and be sure that your footing is solid.

### Installation Instructions Warning



**WARNING:** Read the installation instructions before you connect the router to a power source.

**Waarschuwing** Raadpleeg de installatie-aanwijzingen voordat u het systeem met de voeding verbindt.

**Varoit** Lue asennusohjeet ennen järjestelmän yhdistämistä virtälähteeseen.

**Attention** Avant de brancher le système sur la source d'alimentation, consulter les directives d'installation.

**Warnung** Lesen Sie die Installationsanweisungen, bevor Sie das System an die Stromquelle anschließen.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Consultare le istruzioni di installazione prima di collegare il sistema all'alimentatore.

**Advarsel** Les installasjonsinstruksjonene før systemet kobles til strømkilden.

**Aviso** Leia as instruções de instalação antes de ligar o sistema à sua fonte de energia.

**¡Atención!** Ver las instrucciones de instalación antes de conectar el sistema a la red de alimentación.

**Varning!** Läs installationsanvisningarna innan du kopplar systemet till dess strömförsörjningsenhet.

---

## Rack-Mounting Requirements and Warnings

Ensure that the equipment rack into which the Services Router is installed is evenly and securely supported, to avoid the hazardous condition that could result from uneven mechanical loading.

---



**WARNING:** To prevent bodily injury when mounting or servicing the router in a rack, take the following precautions to ensure that the system remains stable. The following directives help maintain your safety:

- The router must be installed into a rack that is secured to the building structure.
  - The router should be mounted at the bottom of the rack if it is the only unit in the rack.
  - When mounting the router in a partially filled rack, load the rack from the bottom to the top with the heaviest component at the bottom of the rack.
  - If the rack is provided with stabilizing devices, install the stabilizers before mounting or servicing the router in the rack.
- 



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om lichamelijk letsel te voorkomen wanneer u dit toestel in een rek monteert of het daar een servicebeurt geeft, moet u speciale voorzorgsmaatregelen nemen om ervoor te zorgen dat het toestel stabiel blijft. De onderstaande richtlijnen worden verstrekt om uw veiligheid te verzekeren:

- De Juniper Networks router moet in een stellage worden geïnstalleerd die aan een bouwsel is verankerd.

- Dit toestel dient onderaan in het rek gemonteerd te worden als het toestel het enige in het rek is.
  - Wanneer u dit toestel in een gedeeltelijk gevuld rek monteert, dient u het rek van onderen naar boven te laden met het zwaarste onderdeel onderaan in het rek.
  - Als het rek voorzien is van stabiliseringshulpmiddelen, dient u de stabilisatoren te monteren voordat u het toestel in het rek monteert of het daar een servicebeurt geeft.
- 



**WARNING: Varoitus** Kun laite asetetaan telineeseen tai huolletaan sen ollessa telineessä, on noudatettava erityisiä varotoimia järjestelmän vakavuuden säilyttämiseksi, jotta vältetään loukkaantumiselta. Noudata seuraavia turvallisuusohjeita:

- Juniper Networks router on asennettava telineeseen, joka on kiinnitetty rakennukseen.
  - Jos telineessä ei ole muita laitteita, aseta laite telineen alaosaan.
  - Jos laite asetetaan osaksi täytettyyn telineeseen, aloita kuormittaminen sen alaosasta kaikkein raskaimmalla esineellä ja siirry sitten sen yläosaan.
  - Jos telinettä varten on vakaimet, asenna ne ennen laitteen asettamista telineeseen tai sen huoltamista siinä.
- 



**WARNING: Attention** Pour éviter toute blessure corporelle pendant les opérations de montage ou de réparation de cette unité en casier, il convient de prendre des précautions spéciales afin de maintenir la stabilité du système. Les directives ci-dessous sont destinées à assurer la protection du personnel:

- Le rack sur lequel est monté le Juniper Networks router doit être fixé à la structure du bâtiment.
  - Si cette unité constitue la seule unité montée en casier, elle doit être placée dans le bas.
  - Si cette unité est montée dans un casier partiellement rempli, charger le casier de bas en haut en plaçant l'élément le plus lourd dans le bas.
  - Si le casier est équipé de dispositifs stabilisateurs, installer les stabilisateurs avant de monter ou de réparer l'unité en casier.
-



**WARNING: Warnung** Zur Vermeidung von Körperverletzung beim Anbringen oder Warten dieser Einheit in einem Gestell müssen Sie besondere Vorkehrungen treffen, um sicherzustellen, daß das System stabil bleibt. Die folgenden Richtlinien sollen zur Gewährleistung Ihrer Sicherheit dienen:

- Der Juniper Networks router muß in einem Gestell installiert werden, das in der Gebäudestruktur verankert ist.
  - Wenn diese Einheit die einzige im Gestell ist, sollte sie unten im Gestell angebracht werden.
  - Bei Anbringung dieser Einheit in einem zum Teil gefüllten Gestell ist das Gestell von unten nach oben zu laden, wobei das schwerste Bauteil unten im Gestell anzubringen ist.
  - Wird das Gestell mit Stabilisierungszubehör geliefert, sind zuerst die Stabilisatoren zu installieren, bevor Sie die Einheit im Gestell anbringen oder sie warten.
- 



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per evitare infortuni fisici durante il montaggio o la manutenzione di questa unità in un supporto, occorre osservare speciali precauzioni per garantire che il sistema rimanga stabile. Le seguenti direttive vengono fornite per garantire la sicurezza personale:

- Il Juniper Networks router deve essere installato in un telaio, il quale deve essere fissato alla struttura dell'edificio.
  - Questa unità deve venire montata sul fondo del supporto, se si tratta dell'unica unità da montare nel supporto.
  - Quando questa unità viene montata in un supporto parzialmente pieno, caricare il supporto dal basso all'alto, con il componente più pesante sistemato sul fondo del supporto.
  - Se il supporto è dotato di dispositivi stabilizzanti, installare tali dispositivi prima di montare o di procedere alla manutenzione dell'unità nel supporto.
- 



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå fysiske skader under montering eller reparasjonsarbeid på denne enheten når den befinner seg i et kabinett. Vær nøye med at systemet er stabilt. Følgende retningslinjer er gitt for å verne om sikkerheten:

- Juniper Networks router må installeres i et stativ som er forankret til bygningsstrukturen.



- Denne enheten bør monteres nederst i kabinettet hvis dette er den eneste enheten i kabinettet.
- Ved montering av denne enheten i et kabinett som er delvis fylt, skal kabinettet lastes fra bunnen og opp med den tyngste komponenten nederst i kabinettet.
- Hvis kabinettet er utstyrt med stabiliseringsutstyr, skal stabilisatorene installeres før montering eller utføring av reparasjonsarbeid på enheten i kabinettet.



**WARNING: Aviso** Para se prevenir contra danos corporais ao montar ou reparar esta unidade numa estante, deverá tomar precauções especiais para se certificar de que o sistema possui um suporte estável. As seguintes directrizes ajudá-lo-ão a efectuar o seu trabalho com segurança:

- O Juniper Networks router deverá ser instalado numa prateleira fixa à estrutura do edifício.
- Esta unidade deverá ser montada na parte inferior da estante, caso seja esta a única unidade a ser montada.
- Ao montar esta unidade numa estante parcialmente ocupada, coloque os itens mais pesados na parte inferior da estante, arrumando-os de baixo para cima.
- Se a estante possuir um dispositivo de estabilização, instale-o antes de montar ou reparar a unidade.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para evitar lesiones durante el montaje de este equipo sobre un bastidor, o posteriormente durante su mantenimiento, se debe poner mucho cuidado en que el sistema quede bien estable. Para garantizar su seguridad, proceda según las siguientes instrucciones:

- El Juniper Networks router debe instalarse en un bastidor fijado a la estructura del edificio.
- Colocar el equipo en la parte inferior del bastidor, cuando sea la única unidad en el mismo.
- Cuando este equipo se vaya a instalar en un bastidor parcialmente ocupado, comenzar la instalación desde la parte inferior hacia la superior colocando el equipo más pesado en la parte inferior.
- Si el bastidor dispone de dispositivos estabilizadores, instalar éstos antes de montar o proceder al mantenimiento del equipo instalado en el bastidor.



**WARNING: Varning!** För att undvika kroppsskada när du installerar eller utför underhållsarbete på denna enhet på en ställning måste du vidta särskilda försiktighetsåtgärder för att försäkra dig om att systemet står stadigt. Följande riktlinjer ges för att trygga din säkerhet:

- Juniper Networks router måste installeras i en ställning som är förankrad i byggnadens struktur.
- Om denna enhet är den enda enheten på ställningen skall den installeras längst ned på ställningen.
- Om denna enhet installeras på en delvis fylld ställning skall ställningen fyllas nedifrån och upp, med de tyngsta enheterna längst ned på ställningen.
- Om ställningen är försedd med stabiliseringsdon skall dessa monteras fast innan enheten installeras eller underhålls på ställningen.

---

### Ramp Warning

---



**WARNING:** When installing the router, do not use a ramp inclined at more than 10 degrees.

**Waarschuwing** Gebruik een oprijplaat niet onder een hoek van meer dan 10 graden.

**Varoitus** Älä käytä sellaista kaltevaa pintaa, jonka kaltevuus ylittää 10 astetta.

**Attention** Ne pas utiliser une rampe dont l'inclinaison est supérieure à 10 degrés.

**Warnung** Keine Rampen mit einer Neigung von mehr als 10 Grad verwenden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non usare una rampa con pendenza superiore a 10 gradi.

**Advarsel** Bruk aldri en rampe som heller mer enn 10 grader.

**Aviso** Não utilize uma rampa com uma inclinação superior a 10 graus.

**¡Atención!** No usar una rampa inclinada más de 10 grados

**Varning!** Använd inte ramp med en lutning på mer än 10 grader.

---

## Laser and LED Safety Guidelines and Warnings

Single-mode Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) are equipped with laser transmitters, which are considered a Class 1 Laser Product by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, and are evaluated as a Class 1 Laser Product per EN 60825-1 + A11 + A2 requirements.

Observe the following guidelines and warnings:

- General Laser Safety Guidelines on page 231
- Class 1 Laser Product Warning on page 231
- Class 1 LED Product Warning on page 232
- Laser Beam Warning on page 233
- Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning on page 234

### General Laser Safety Guidelines

When working around PIMs, observe the following safety guidelines to prevent eye injury:

- Do not look into unterminated ports or at fibers that connect to unknown sources.
- Do not examine unterminated optical ports with optical instruments.
- Avoid direct exposure to the beam.



**WARNING:** Unterminated optical connectors can emit invisible laser radiation. The lens in the human eye focuses all the laser power on the retina, so focusing the eye directly on a laser source—even a low-power laser—could permanently damage the eye.

---

### Class 1 Laser Product Warning



**WARNING:** Class 1 laser product.

**Waarschuwing** Klasse-1 laser produkt.

**Varoitus** Luokan 1 lasertuote.

**Attention** Produit laser de classe I.

**Warnung** Laserprodukt der Klasse 1.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prodotto laser di Classe 1.

**Advarsel** Laserprodukt av klasse 1.

**Aviso** Produto laser de classe 1.

**¡Atención!** Producto láser Clase I.

**Varning!** Laserprodukt av klass 1.

---

### **Class 1 LED Product Warning**

---



**WARNING:** Class 1 LED product.

**Waarschuwing** Klasse 1 LED-product.

**Varoitus** Luokan 1 valodiodituote.

**Attention** Alarme de produit LED Class I.

**Warnung** Class 1 LED-Produktwarnung.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Avvertenza prodotto LED di Classe 1.

**Advarsel** LED-produkt i klasse 1.

**Aviso** Produto de classe 1 com LED.

**¡Atención!** Aviso sobre producto LED de Clase 1.

**Varning!** Lysdiodprodukt av klass 1.

---

## Laser Beam Warning



**WARNING:** Do not stare into the laser beam or view it directly with optical instruments.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Niet in de straal staren of hem rechtstreeks bekijken met optische instrumenten.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Älä katso säteeseen äläkä tarkastele sitä suoraan optisen laitteen avulla.



**WARNING: Attention** Ne pas fixer le faisceau des yeux, ni l'observer directement à l'aide d'instruments optiques.



**WARNING: Warnung** Nicht direkt in den Strahl blicken und ihn nicht direkt mit optischen Geräten prüfen.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non fissare il raggio con gli occhi né usare strumenti ottici per osservarlo direttamente.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Stirr eller se ikke direkte p strlen med optiske instrumenter.



**WARNING: Aviso** Não olhe fixamente para o raio, nem olhe para ele directamente com instrumentos ópticos.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** No mirar fijamente el haz ni observarlo directamente con instrumentos ópticos.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Rikta inte blicken in mot strålen och titta inte direkt på den genom optiska instrument.

---

### Radiation from Open Port Apertures Warning

---



**WARNING:** Because invisible radiation may be emitted from the aperture of the port when no fiber cable is connected, avoid exposure to radiation and do not stare into open apertures.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Aangezien onzichtbare straling vanuit de opening van de poort kan komen als er geen fiberkabel aangesloten is, dient blootstelling aan straling en het kijken in open openingen vermeden te worden.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Koska portin aukosta voi emittoitua näkymätöntä säteilyä, kun kuitukaapelia ei ole kytkettynä, vältä säteilylle altistumista äläkä katso avoimiin aukkoihin.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Des radiations invisibles à l'il nu pouvant traverser l'ouverture du port lorsqu'aucun câble en fibre optique n'y est connecté, il est recommandé de ne pas regarder fixement l'intérieur de ces ouvertures.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Aus der Port-Öffnung können unsichtbare Strahlen emittieren, wenn kein Glasfaserkabel angeschlossen ist. Vermeiden Sie es, sich den Strahlungen auszusetzen, und starren Sie nicht in die Öffnungen!

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Quando i cavi in fibra non sono inseriti, radiazioni invisibili possono essere emesse attraverso l'apertura della porta. Evitate di esporvi alle radiazioni e non guardate direttamente nelle aperture.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå utsettelse for stråling, og stirr ikke inn i åpninger som er åpne, fordi usynlig stråling kan emitteres fra portens åpning når det ikke er tilkoblet en fiberkabel.



**WARNING: Aviso** Dada a possibilidade de emissão de radiação invisível através do orifício da via de acesso, quando esta não tiver nenhum cabo de fibra conectado, deverá evitar a exposição à radiação e não deverá olhar fixamente para orifícios que se encontrarem a descoberto.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Debido a que la apertura del puerto puede emitir radiación invisible cuando no existe un cable de fibra conectado, evite mirar directamente a las aperturas para no exponerse a la radiación.



**WARNING: Varning!** Osynlig strålning kan avges från en portöppning utan ansluten fiberkabel och du bör därför undvika att bli utsatt för strålning genom att inte stirra in i oskyddade öppningar.

## Maintenance and Operational Safety Guidelines and Warnings

As you maintain the Services Router, observe the following guidelines and warnings:

- Battery Handling Warning on page 236
- Jewelry Removal Warning on page 237
- Lightning Activity Warning on page 239
- Operating Temperature Warning on page 240
- Product Disposal Warning on page 242

## Battery Handling Warning



**WARNING:** Replacing the battery incorrectly might result in an explosion. Replace the battery only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Er is ontploffingsgevaar als de batterij verkeerd vervangen wordt. Vervang de batterij slechts met hetzelfde of een equivalent type dat door de fabrikant aanbevolen is. Gebruikte batterijen dienen overeenkomstig fabrieksvoorschriften weggeworpen te worden.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Räjähdyksen vaara, jos akku on vaihdettu väärään akkuun. Käytä vaihtamiseen ainoastaan saman- tai vastaavantyyppistä akkua, joka on valmistajan suosittelema. Hävitä käytetyt akut valmistajan ohjeiden mukaan.



**WARNING: Attention** Danger d'explosion si la pile n'est pas remplacée correctement. Ne la remplacer que par une pile de type semblable ou équivalent, recommandée par le fabricant. Jeter les piles usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.



**WARNING: Warnung** Bei Einsetzen einer falschen Batterie besteht Explosionsgefahr. Ersetzen Sie die Batterie nur durch den gleichen oder vom Hersteller empfohlenen Batterietyp. Entsorgen Sie die benutzten Batterien nach den Anweisungen des Herstellers.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Det kan være fare for eksplosjon hvis batteriet skiftes på feil måte. Skift kun med samme eller tilsvarende type som er anbefalt av produsenten. Kasser brukte batterier i henhold til produsentens instruksjoner.





**WARNING: Avvertenza** Pericolo di esplosione se la batteria non è installata correttamente. Sostituire solo con una di tipo uguale o equivalente, consigliata dal produttore. Eliminare le batterie usate secondo le istruzioni del produttore.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Existe perigo de explosão se a bateria for substituída incorrectamente. Substitua a bateria por uma bateria igual ou de um tipo equivalente recomendado pelo fabricante. Destrua as baterias usadas conforme as instruções do fabricante.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Existe peligro de explosión si la batería se reemplaza de manera incorrecta. Reemplazar la batería exclusivamente con el mismo tipo o el equivalente recomendado por el fabricante. Desechar las baterías gastadas según las instrucciones del fabricante.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte. Ersätt endast batteriet med samma batterityp som rekommenderas av tillverkaren eller motsvarande. Följ tillverkarens anvisningar vid kassering av använda batterier.

---

### Jewelry Removal Warning

---



**WARNING:** Before working on equipment that is connected to power lines, remove jewelry, including rings, necklaces, and watches. Metal objects heat up when connected to power and ground and can cause serious burns or weld the metal object to the terminals.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Alvorens aan apparatuur te werken die met elektrische leidingen is verbonden, sieraden (inclusief ringen, kettingen en horloges) verwijderen. Metalen voorwerpen worden warm wanneer ze met stroom en aarde zijn verbonden, en kunnen ernstige brandwonden veroorzaken of het metalen voorwerp aan de aansluitklemmen lassen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Ennen kuin työskentelet voimavirtajohtoihin kytkettyjen laitteiden parissa, ota pois kaikki korut (sormukset, kaulakorut ja kellot mukaan lukien). Metalliesineet kuumenevat, kun ne ovat yhteydessä sähkövirran ja maan kanssa, ja ne voivat aiheuttaa vakavia palovammoja tai hitsata metalliesineet kiinni liitännäspoihin.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Avant d'accéder à cet équipement connecté aux lignes électriques, ôter tout bijou (anneaux, colliers et montres compris). Lorsqu'ils sont branchés à l'alimentation et reliés à la terre, les objets métalliques chauffent, ce qui peut provoquer des blessures graves ou souder l'objet métallique aux bornes.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Vor der Arbeit an Geräten, die an das Netz angeschlossen sind, jeglichen Schmuck (einschließlich Ringe, Ketten und Uhren) abnehmen. Metallgegenstände erhitzen sich, wenn sie an das Netz und die Erde angeschlossen werden, und können schwere Verbrennungen verursachen oder an die Anschlußklemmen angeschweißt werden.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Prima di intervenire su apparecchiature collegate alle linee di alimentazione, togliersi qualsiasi monile (inclusi anelli, collane, braccialetti ed orologi). Gli oggetti metallici si riscaldano quando sono collegati tra punti di alimentazione e massa: possono causare ustioni gravi oppure il metallo può saldarsi ai terminali.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Fjern alle smykker (inkludert ringer, halskjeder og klokker) før du skal arbeide på utstyr som er koblet til kraftledninger. Metallgjenstander som er koblet til kraftledninger og jord blir svært varme og kan forårsake alvorlige brannskader eller smelte fast til polene.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Antes de trabalhar em equipamento que esteja ligado a linhas de corrente, retire todas as jóias que estiver a usar (incluindo anéis, fios e relógios). Os objectos metálicos aquecerão em contacto com a corrente e em contacto com

---

a ligação à terra, podendo causar queimaduras graves ou ficarem soldados aos terminais.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Antes de operar sobre equipos conectados a líneas de alimentación, quitarse las joyas (incluidos anillos, collares y relojes). Los objetos de metal se calientan cuando se conectan a la alimentación y a tierra, lo que puede ocasionar quemaduras graves o que los objetos metálicos queden soldados a los bornes.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Tag av alla smycken (inklusive ringar, halsband och armbandsur) innan du arbetar på utrustning som är kopplad till kraftledningar. Metallobjekt hettas upp när de kopplas ihop med ström och jord och kan förorsaka allvarliga brännskador; metallobjekt kan också sammansvetsas med kontakterna.

---

### Lightning Activity Warning

---



**WARNING:** Do not work on the system or connect or disconnect cables during periods of lightning activity.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Tijdens onweer dat gepaard gaat met bliksem, dient u niet aan het systeem te werken of kabels aan te sluiten of te ontkoppelen.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Älä työskentele järjestelmän parissa äläkä yhdistä tai irrota kaapeleita ukkosilmalla.

---



**WARNING: Attention** Ne pas travailler sur le système ni brancher ou débrancher les câbles pendant un orage.

---



**WARNING: Warnung** Arbeiten Sie nicht am System und schließen Sie keine Kabel an bzw. trennen Sie keine ab, wenn es gewittert.

---



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Non lavorare sul sistema o collegare oppure scollegare i cavi durante un temporale con fulmini.

---



**WARNING: Advarsel** Utfør aldri arbeid på systemet, eller koble kabler til eller fra systemet når det tordner eller lyner.

---



**WARNING: Aviso** Não trabalhe no sistema ou ligue e desligue cabos durante períodos de mau tempo (trovoada).

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** No operar el sistema ni conectar o desconectar cables durante el transcurso de descargas eléctricas en la atmósfera.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Vid åska skall du aldrig utföra arbete på systemet eller ansluta eller koppla loss kablar.

---

### Operating Temperature Warning

---



**WARNING:** To prevent the router from overheating, do not operate it in an area that exceeds the maximum recommended ambient temperature of 104°F (40°C). To prevent airflow restriction, allow at least 6 inches (15.2 cm) of clearance around the ventilation openings.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Om te voorkomen dat welke router van de Juniper Networks router dan ook oververhit raakt, dient u deze niet te bedienen op een plaats waar de maximale aanbevolen omgevingstemperatuur van 40°C wordt overschreden. Om te voorkomen dat de luchtstroom wordt beperkt, dient er minstens 15,2 cm speling rond de ventilatie-openingen te zijn.



**WARNING: Varoitus** Ettei Juniper Networks router-sarjan reititin ylikuumentuisi, sitä ei saa käyttää tilassa, jonka lämpötila ylittää korkeimman suositellun ympäristölämpötilan 40°C. Ettei ilmanvaihto estyisi, tuuletusaukkojen ympärille on jätettävä ainakin 15,2 cm tilaa.



**WARNING: Attention** Pour éviter toute surchauffe des routeurs de la gamme Juniper Networks router, ne l'utilisez pas dans une zone où la température ambiante est supérieure à 40°C. Pour permettre un flot d'air constant, dégagez un espace d'au moins 15,2 cm autour des ouvertures de ventilations.



**WARNING: Warnung** Um einen Router der router vor Überhitzung zu schützen, darf dieser nicht in einer Gegend betrieben werden, in der die Umgebungstemperatur das empfohlene Maximum von 40°C überschreitet. Um Lüftungsverschluß zu verhindern, achten Sie darauf, daß mindestens 15,2 cm lichter Raum um die Lüftungsöffnungen herum frei bleibt.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** Per evitare il surriscaldamento dei router, non adoperateli in un locale che ecceda la temperatura ambientale massima di 40°C. Per evitare che la circolazione dell'aria sia impedita, lasciate uno spazio di almeno 15.2 cm di fronte alle aperture delle ventole.



**WARNING: Advarsel** Unngå overoppheting av eventuelle rutere i Juniper Networks router Disse skal ikke brukes på steder der den anbefalte maksimale omgivelsestemperaturen overstiger 40°C (104°F). Sørg for at klaringen rundt lufteåpningene er minst 15,2 cm (6 tommer) for å forhindre nedsatt luftsirkulasjon.



**WARNING: Aviso** Para evitar o sobreaquecimento do encaminhador Juniper Networks router, não utilize este equipamento numa área que exceda a temperatura máxima recomendada de 40°C. Para evitar a restrição à circulação de ar, deixe pelo menos um espaço de 15,2 cm à volta das aberturas de ventilação.

---



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** Para impedir que un encaminador de la serie Juniper Networks router se recaliente, no lo haga funcionar en un área en la que se supere la temperatura ambiente máxima recomendada de 40°C. Para impedir la restricción de la entrada de aire, deje un espacio mínimo de 15,2 cm alrededor de las aperturas para ventilación.

---



**WARNING: Varning!** Förhindra att en Juniper Networks router överhettas genom att inte använda den i ett område där den maximalt rekommenderade omgivningstemperaturen på 40°C överskrids. Förhindra att luftcirkulationen inskränks genom att se till att det finns fritt utrymme på minst 15,2 cm omkring ventilationsöppningarna.

---

### Product Disposal Warning

---



**WARNING:** Disposal of this product must be handled according to all national laws and regulations.

---



**WARNING: Waarschuwing** Dit produkt dient volgens alle landelijke wetten en voorschriften te worden afgedankt.

---



**WARNING: Varoitus** Tämän tuotteen lopullisesta hävittämisestä tulee huolehtia kaikkia valtakunnallisia lakeja ja säännöksiä noudattaen.

---



**WARNING: Attention** La mise au rebut définitive de ce produit doit être effectuée conformément à toutes les lois et réglementations en vigueur.



**WARNING: Warnung** Dieses Produkt muß den geltenden Gesetzen und Vorschriften entsprechend entsorgt werden.



**WARNING: Avvertenza** L'eliminazione finale di questo prodotto deve essere eseguita osservando le normative italiane vigenti in materia



**WARNING: Advarsel** Endelig disponering av dette produktet må skje i henhold til nasjonale lover og forskrifter.



**WARNING: Aviso** A descartagem final deste produto deverá ser efectuada de acordo com os regulamentos e a legislação nacional.



**WARNING: ¡Atención!** El desecho final de este producto debe realizarse según todas las leyes y regulaciones nacionales



**WARNING: Varning!** Slutlig kassering av denna produkt bör skötas i enlighet med landets alla lagar och föreskrifter.

## Agency Approvals

---

The Services Router complies with the following standards:

- Safety
  - CAN/CSA-22.2 No. 60950-1-03-UL 60950-1 Safety of Information Technology Equipment
  - EN 60950-1 Safety of Information Technology Equipment
  - EN 60825-1 Safety of Laser Products - Part 1: Equipment Classification, Requirements and User's Guide
- EMC
  - AS/NZS 3548 Class B (Australia/New Zealand)
  - EN 55022 Class B Emissions (Europe)
  - FCC Part 15 Class B (USA)
  - VCCI Class B (Japan)
  - FCC Part 68
  - Industry Canada CS-03
- Immunity
  - EN 61000-3-2 Power Line Harmonics
  - EN 61000-3-3 Voltage Fluctuations and Flicker
  - EN 61000-4-2 ESD
  - EN 61000-4-3 Radiated Immunity
  - EN 61000-4-4 EFT
  - EN 61000-4-5 Surge
  - EN 61000-4-6 Low Frequency Common Immunity
  - EN 61000-4-11 Voltage Dips and Sags
- ETSI
  - ETSI EN-300386-2 Telecommunication Network Equipment. Electromagnetic Compatibility Requirements



## Compliance Statements for EMC Requirements

---

- Canada on page 245
- Japan on page 246
- Taiwan on page 246
- United States on page 246

### Canada

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets certain telecommunications network protective, operational, and safety requirements. Industry Canada does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the users' satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.



**CAUTION:** Users should not attempt to make electrical ground connections by themselves, but should contact the appropriate inspection authority or an electrician, as appropriate.

---

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines, and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

## Japan

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境でを使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。

The preceding translates as follows:

This is a Class B product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). If this product is used near a radio or television receiver in a domestic environment, it may cause radio interference. Install and use the equipment according to the instruction manual.

## Taiwan

### 警告使用者

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

## United States

The Services Router has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

## FCC Part 15 Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try and correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

## FCC Part 68 Statement

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules. On the product is a label that contains the FCC registration number for this device. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a compatible modular jack which is Part 68 compliant. See installation instructions for details.

If this device causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. The telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If trouble is experienced with this equipment or for repair or warranty information, please follow the applicable procedures explained in the “Technical Support” section of this manual.

- FCC Registration Number—See label on product.
- Required Connector (USOC)—RJ-48C
- Service Order Code (SOC)—6.ON

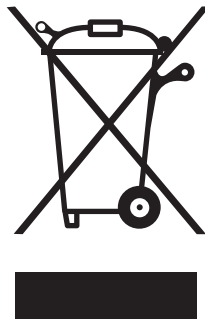
## Product Reclamation and Recycling Program

---

Juniper Networks is committed to environmentally responsible behavior. As part of this commitment, we work to comply with environmental standards such as the European Union's *Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment* (WEEE) Directive and *Restriction of Hazardous Substances* (RoHS) Directive.

These directives and other similar regulations from countries outside the European Union regulate electronic waste management and the reduction or elimination of specific hazardous materials in electronic products. The WEEE Directive requires electrical and electronics manufacturers to provide mechanisms for the recycling and reuse of their products. The RoHS Directive restricts the use of certain substances that are commonly found in electronic products today. Restricted substances include heavy metals, including lead, and polybrominated materials. The RoHS Directive, with some exemptions, applies to all electrical and electronic equipment.

In accordance with Article 11(2) of Directive 2002/96/EC (WEEE), products put on the market after 13 August 2005 are marked with the following symbol or include it in their documentation: a crossed-out wheeled waste bin with a bar beneath.



Juniper Networks provides recycling support for our equipment worldwide to comply with the WEEE Directive. For recycling information, send e-mail to [recycling@juniper.net](mailto:recycling@juniper.net) indicating the type of Juniper Networks equipment that you wish to dispose of and the country where it is currently located, or contact your Juniper Networks account representative.

Products returned through our reclamation process are recycled, recovered, or disposed of in a responsible manner. Our packaging is designed to be recycled and should be handled in accordance with your local recycling policies.

## **Part 5**

# **Index**



# Index

## Symbols

[ ], in configuration statements	xvii
{ }, in configuration statements	xvii
( ), in syntax descriptions	xvii
< >, in syntax descriptions	xvii
(pipe), in syntax descriptions	xvii
* (red asterisk)	68
? command	
for CLI online help	74
in configuration mode	72
in operational mode	71
? icon (J-Web)	68
#, comments in configuration statements	xvii
#, configuration mode command prompt	72
>, operational mode command prompt	71
10/100Base-TX ports <i>See</i> Fast Ethernet ports	
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM (J4300 and J6300)	
description	55
PIM ONLINE LED	57
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM (J4300 and J6300)	
description	55
PIM ONLINE LED	57

## A

AC plug types	88
AC power	86
connecting power	100
dedicated AC power feed requirement	170
electrical specifications	86
grounding lug connection	101
grounding the router	100
installing a J6300 power supply	170
J2300 chassis	11
J2300 system	18
J4300 chassis	21
J4300 system	30
J6300 chassis	22
J6300 system	30
power cord replacement (J2300 or J4300)	165
removing a J6300 power supply	167
safety guidelines	212
<i>See also</i> AC power cords; power	
AC power cords	
electrical specifications	87

physical requirements	87
plug types	88
replacing (J2300 or J4300)	165
replacing (J6300)	173
accident, steps to take	219
ACTIVITY LED	18, 41, 55
ad0 <i>See</i> compact flash, primary	
ad2 <i>See</i> compact flash, removable	
addresses	
192.168.1.1/24	111
fe-0/0/0 for autoinstallation	111
loopback	110
management interface	111
ADSL PIM (J4300 and J6300)	
description	57
PIM ONLINE LED	58
ADSL ports	
J4300 and J6300	57
LED states	58
RJ-11 connector pinouts	202
agency approvals	244
airflow	
J2300	19
J4300 and J6300	31
space requirement	81
ALARM LED	15
indications	176
alarms	
ALARM LED	15
conditions, in chassis components	176
alternative boot media <i>See</i> boot devices; USB	
altitude requirement	84
Annex A; Annex B <i>See</i> ADSL; SHDSL	
antistatic mat	209
approvals, agency	244
asymmetric digital subscriber line <i>See</i> ADSL	
autoinstallation	
automatic configuration process	131
CLI configuration editor	132
default configuration file	131
description	111
establishing	129
host-specific configuration file	131
interfaces	130

IP address procurement process .....	130
J-Web configuration editor .....	132
overview .....	130
protocols for procuring an IP address .....	130
requirements .....	131
status .....	134
TFTP server .....	130
verifying .....	133
automatic configuration <i>See</i> autoinstallation	
<b>B</b>	
backup compact flash, removing .....	158
backup router .....	110
defining (configuration editor) .....	125
basic connectivity .....	
CLI configuration editor .....	120
establishing .....	107
J-Web configuration editor .....	120
Quick Configuration .....	114
requirements .....	113
sample configuration .....	127
verifying .....	127
battery handling .....	236
BGP route reflectors license .....	136
blank panel .....	
for power supply (J6300) .....	167
blinking .....	
blue LED state .....	14
configuration LED state .....	17
LAN port ACTIVITY LED state .....	18, 41, 55
POWER ON LED state .....	16
blue Juniper Networks logo LED .....	14
boot devices .....	
J2300 .....	13
J4300 .....	26
J6300 .....	26
removable compact flash .....	29
boot process, backup router for .....	110
boot sequence .....	
J2300 .....	13
J2400 .....	26
J6300 .....	26
BOOTP, for autoinstallation .....	133
Border Gateway Protocol <i>See</i> BGP	
bottom pane .....	65
braces, in configuration statements .....	xvii
brackets .....	
angle, in syntax descriptions .....	xvii
square, in configuration statements .....	xvii
browser interface <i>See</i> J-Web interface	
BTUs per hour .....	84
buttons .....	
CONFIG .....	16
power .....	15

**C**

## cables

AC power <i>See</i> AC power cords	
ADSL RJ-11 pinouts .....	202
arranging for safety .....	152
connecting to network media .....	98
console port, connecting .....	121
console port, DB-9 connector pinouts .....	199
console port, replacing .....	150
console port, RJ-45 connector pinouts .....	198
DC cables <i>See</i> DC power cables	
disconnecting PIM cables .....	154
E1 RJ-48 pinouts .....	199
Ethernet rollover, connecting .....	121
Ethernet rollover, replacing .....	150
Ethernet, connecting .....	114
Ethernet, RJ-45 connector pinouts .....	198
grounding .....	99
ISDN RJ-45 pinouts .....	202
PIM, installing .....	154
PIM, removing .....	154
reducing radio frequency interference (RFI) .....	86
serial EIA-530A DCE pinouts .....	194
serial EIA-530A DTE pinouts .....	193
serial PIM specifications .....	189
serial RS-232 DCE pinouts .....	191
serial RS-232 DTE pinouts .....	190
serial RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE pinouts .....	192
serial RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE pinouts .....	191
serial V.35 DCE pinouts .....	196
serial V.35 DTE pinouts .....	195
serial X.21 DCE pinouts .....	197
serial X.21 DTE pinouts .....	197
SHDSL RJ-11 pinouts .....	202
T1 RJ-48 pinouts .....	199
case number, for JTAC .....	182
certificate <i>See</i> digital certificate	
chassis process .....	34
chassis .....	
alarm conditions and remedies .....	176
component serial number labels .....	179
grounding .....	99
J2300 .....	9
J2300 Dual-Port E1 .....	43
J2300 Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI .....	44
J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL .....	46
J2300 Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T .....	47
J2300 Dual-Port Serial .....	41
J2300 Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI .....	42
J2300 Dual-Port T1 .....	43
J2300 Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI .....	44
J2300 types supported .....	40
J4300 .....	20
J6300 .....	20
lifting guidelines .....	225



- chassis software process .....34
  - checklist, for site preparation .....90
  - clear operation, CONFIG button on the front panel.....16
  - clear-text access .....112
  - clearance .....81
  - clearing and resetting to factory configuration, with
    - the CONFIG button .....16
  - CLI configuration editor .....62
    - autoinstallation .....132
    - basic settings .....122
    - capabilities .....62
    - initial configuration.....120
    - statement types.....72
    - See also* configuration
  - command completion
    - description .....74
    - setting on and off.....76
  - command hierarchy .....69
  - command prompts
    - changing .....76
    - configuration mode (#) .....72
    - operational mode (>) .....71
  - command-line interface *See* CLI configuration editor; JUNOS CLI
  - comments, in configuration statements ..... xvii
  - committed configuration
    - J-Web configuration editor display .....68
  - compact flash
    - backup, removing .....158
    - minor (yellow) alarm .....176
    - primary, description .....29
    - primary, installing .....156
    - primary, removing.....155
    - removable, description .....29
    - removable, installing .....159
    - removable, J4300 and J6300 .....29
    - removable, LED states.....29
    - removable, removing .....158
  - compliance
    - EMC requirements.....245
    - general standards.....244
    - product reclamation and recycling .....248
  - components
    - packing for shipment .....184
    - replacing .....149
    - serial number label .....179
    - shipped.....93
    - troubleshooting .....175
    - See also* LEDs
  - CONFIG button
    - for clearing all configurations and resetting to factory configuration.....16
    - for rescue configuration .....16
  - configuration
    - autoinstallation of.....129
    - clearing, with the CONFIG button .....16
    - factory, resetting with the CONFIG button .....16
    - installation on multiple Services Routers.....129
  - configuration editor *See* CLI configuration editor; J-Web configuration editor
  - configuration hierarchy, J-Web display.....68
  - configuration LED states .....17
  - configuration mode.....73
    - commands .....72
    - prompt (#) .....72
    - See also* CLI configuration editor
  - connection
    - AC power.....100
    - DC power .....101
    - network cables.....98
  - connectivity
    - hardware .....91
    - through J-Web.....114
    - through the CLI .....120
  - console port
    - adapter .....120
    - connecting through the CLI .....120
    - DB-9 connector pinouts .....199
    - description .....17
    - replacing the cable .....150
    - RJ-45 connector pinouts.....198
    - settings.....121
  - container statements .....72
  - conventions
    - notice icons .....xvi
    - text and syntax .....xvi
  - cooling system
    - airflow requirement .....81
    - J2300 .....19
    - J4300 .....31
    - J6300 .....31
  - cords *See* AC power cords; cables; DC power cables
  - curly braces, in configuration statements ..... xvii
  - customer support .....xx
    - contacting JTAC .....xx
    - contacting JTAC for hardware return.....181
    - information required for hardware return.....182
- ## D
- daemons *See* processes, software
  - data link switching *See* DLSw
  - DB-9 connector pinouts.....199
  - DC power.....86
    - cable attachment to a J2300 terminal block .....103
    - cable attachment to a J4300 terminal block .....104
    - cable attachment to a J6300 terminal block .....105
    - connecting power.....101
    - dedicated DC power feed requirement.....172
    - electrical specifications.....86
    - grounding lug connection .....103

grounding requirements and warning	215	documentation set	
grounding the router	102	comments on	xx
installing a J6300 power supply	171	domain name	109
J2300 chassis	11	defining (configuration editor)	124
J2300 system	18	defining (Quick Configuration)	116
J4300 chassis	22	<i>See also</i> DNS server	
J4300 system	30	Domain Name System	109
J6300 chassis	23	domain search	
J6300 system	30	defining (configuration editor)	125
power cord replacement (J2300 or J4300)	165	defining (Quick Configuration)	117
power disconnection warning	213	downloading	
removing a J6300 power supply	168	licenses (J-Web)	141
requirements	86	DRAM modules	
safety guidelines (general)	212	installing	164
safety guidelines, power sources for redundant		removing	163
power supplies	213	dry chemical fire extinguishers, prohibited	85
wiring sequence warning	215	DS1 ports <i>See</i> T1 ports	
wiring terminations warning	217	DS3 ports <i>See</i> T3 ports	
<i>See also</i> DC power cables; power		DSL <i>See</i> ADSL; SHDSL	
DC power cables		dual inline memory modules <i>See</i> DIMMs	
electrical specifications	88	Dual-Port E1 chassis (J2300)	43
physical requirements	88	Dual-Port E1 PIM (J4300 and J6300)	51
replacing (J2300 or J4300)	165	Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300)	44
replacing (J6300)	174	Dual-Port E3 PIM (J6300)	53
default configuration file, for autoinstallation	131	Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM (J4300 and J6300)	54
default gateway	110	Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis (J2300)	46
defining (Quick Configuration)	117	Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis (J2300)	47
deleting		Dual-Port Serial chassis (J2300)	41
all configurations, with the CONFIG button	16	Dual-Port Serial PIM (J4300 and J6300)	50
licenses (CLI)	142	Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300)	42
licenses (J-Web)	140	Dual-Port T1 chassis (J2300)	43
desk installation (J2300 only)	94	Dual-Port T1 PIM (J4300 and J6300)	51
clearance requirement	82	Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis (J2300)	44
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)	111	Dual-Port T3 PIM (J6300)	53
DHCP server		Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	111
after initial configuration	111		
before initial configuration	111	<b>E</b>	
maintaining after initial setup	116	E1 ports	
diagnosis		J2300	43
chassis	176	J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port)	44
hardware	176	J4300 and J6300	51
digital certificate		LED states	44, 46, 53
for SSH encrypted access	112	license	137
for SSL encrypted access	118	RJ-48 cable pinouts	199
digital subscriber line <i>See</i> ADSL; SHDSL		E3 ports	
DIMMs (dual inline memory modules)		BNC connector pinouts	202
installing	164	J6300	53
removing	163	LED states	54
DLSw license	136	earth ground <i>See</i> grounding	
DNS (Domain Name System)	109	earthquakes	
DNS server		rack-mount requirements	83
defining (configuration editor)	125	seismic requirements	84
defining (Quick Configuration)	117	EIA-530A DCE cable pinouts	194
function	109	EIA-530A DTE cable pinouts	193
		electrical specifications	86

electricity  
     safety warnings ..... 210  
     wiring guidelines ..... 85

electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)  
     compliance with requirements ..... 245  
     preventing problems with ..... 86  
     standards ..... 244

electromagnetic interference (EMI)  
     compliance with requirements ..... 245  
     standards ..... 244  
     suppressing ..... 86

electronic equipment, recycling ..... 248

electrostatic bag, for storing components ..... 209

electrostatic discharge, preventing ..... 209

EMC  
     compliance with requirements ..... 245  
     preventing problems with ..... 86  
     standards ..... 244

EMI  
     compliance with requirements ..... 245  
     standards ..... 244  
     suppressing ..... 86

encrypted access  
     through HTTPS ..... 118  
     through SSH ..... 112  
     through SSL ..... 118

environment, CLI  
     displaying ..... 75  
     setting ..... 75

environmental requirements for operation ..... 83

EPROM ..... 13, 26

ESD (electrostatic discharge), preventing ..... 209

ESD wrist strap  
     verifying resistance, for safety ..... 209  
     wearing during installation ..... 10, 20

Ethernet cable  
     connecting the Services Router to a management device ..... 114  
     RJ-45 connector pinouts ..... 198

Ethernet ports *See* Fast Ethernet ports

Ethernet rollover cable  
     connecting the Services Router to a management device ..... 121  
     DB-9 connector pinouts ..... 199  
     replacing ..... 150  
     RJ-45 connector pinouts ..... 198

**F**

factory configuration, committing with the CONFIG button ..... 16

failures  
     PIM ..... 176  
     Routing Engine fan ..... 177

fans  
     J2300 ..... 19

    J4300 ..... 31  
     J6300 ..... 31

Fast Ethernet ports  
     autoinstallation on ..... 130  
     J2300 ..... 18  
     J4300 and J6300 ..... 28, 54  
     LED states ..... 18, 41, 55  
     license, for PIM ports ..... 137  
     LINK/ SPEED status ..... 18, 41, 55  
     PORT 0 ..... 111  
     PORT 0, connecting through J-Web ..... 114

fe-0/0/0 ..... 18, 28  
     connecting through J-Web ..... 114  
     defining address (configuration editor) ..... 126  
     defining address (Quick Configuration) ..... 118  
     for autoinstallation ..... 111  
     management interface ..... 111  
     no license required ..... 137  
     *See also* Fast Ethernet ports

fe-0/0/1 *See* Fast Ethernet ports

feature licenses *See* licenses

feature overview ..... 6

features, licensed, displaying ..... 139

field-replaceable units, replacing ..... 149

fire extinguishers  
     prohibited ..... 85  
     required ..... 84

fire safety requirements ..... 84

fire suppression  
     equipment required ..... 84  
     shutdown requirement ..... 84

font conventions ..... xvi

forwarding software process ..... 34

FPC, PIM slot number in command displays ..... 153, 155, 179

free ports ..... 139

front panel  
     Dual-Port E1 chassis ..... 43  
     Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis ..... 45  
     Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis ..... 46  
     Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis ..... 48  
     Dual-Port Serial chassis ..... 41  
     Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI S/T chassis ..... 42  
     Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI U chassis ..... 42  
     Dual-Port T1 chassis ..... 43  
     Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis ..... 45  
     J2300 ..... 14  
     J4300 ..... 27  
     J6300 ..... 27

FRUs (field-replaceable units)  
     PIMs, overview ..... 49  
     replacing ..... 149

fwdd process ..... 34

**G**

G.SHDSL PIM (J4300 and J6300)	
description	59
PIM ONLINE LED	60
G.SHDSL ports <i>See</i> SHDSL ports	
gateway, default	110
glossary	
autoinstallation	129
basic connectivity	107
PIMs	37
graceful shutdown	16, 105
graphical user interface <i>See</i> J-Web interface	
grounding	
cable	99
chassis	99
connection for AC power	101
connection for DC power	103
DC power requirements and warning	215
equipment warning	218
grounding lug	
connecting for AC power	101
connecting for DC power	103
specifications	99
group licenses	140
GUI <i>See</i> J-Web interface	

**H**

hardware	
alarm conditions and remedies	176
installation and connection	91
maintenance	149
PIM overview	37
product overview	3
reclamation and recycling	248
replacing components	149
returning	179
troubleshooting components	175
<i>See also</i> LEDs	
hardware features	9
J2300 components	12
J2300 front panel	14
J4300 components	24
J4300 front panel	27
J6300 components	24
J6300 front panel	27
PIMs	37
product overview	3
hazardous materials, reclamation and recycling	248
help	
J-Web interface	68
JUNOS CLI	74
help icon (?)	68
help reference command	75
help topic command	75
host-specific configuration file, for autoinstallation	131

hostname	109
defining (configuration editor)	124
defining (Quick Configuration)	116
<i>See also</i> DNS server	
hostname.conf file, for autoinstallation	131–132
HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol over SSL)	
management access	112
Quick Configuration	118
humidity requirement	84
Hyperterminal, for terminal emulation	121
Hypertext Transfer Protocol over SSL <i>See</i> HTTPS	

**I**

IBM networking, DLSw license	136
idle time, setting for a CLI session	76
ifd process	34
immunity standards	244
IN USE LED states	29
initial configuration requirements	113
injury, steps to take	219
installation	
AC power supplies (J6300)	170
DC power supplies (J6300)	171
desk (J2300 only)	94
DIMMs	164
DRAM modules	164
initial	91
licenses (CLI)	141
licenses (J-Web)	140
PIM cables	154
PIMs	152
preparation	81
primary compact flash	156
rack <i>See</i> rack installation	
removable compact flash	159
requirements	91
restricted access, J4300 and J6300	31, 97
safety guidelines and warnings	225
site checklist	90
site guidelines	81
tools and equipment	92
USB storage device	161
wall (J2300 only)	95
Integrated Services Digital Network <i>See</i> ISDN	
interface software process	34
interfaces	4
J2300 overview	4
J2300 types supported	40
J4300 overview	5
J4300 types supported	49
J6300 overview	5
J6300 types supported	49
<i>See also</i> ports	
Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide version of	
JUNOS software	65

IPSec (IP Security), VPN license .....	136
ISDN BRI ports .....	
J2300, BRI S/T (with E1 ports) .....	44
J2300, BRI S/T (with serial ports) .....	42
J2300, BRI S/T (with SHDSL ports) .....	47
J2300, BRI U (with serial ports) .....	42
J2300, BRI U (with T1 ports) .....	44
J4300 and J6300, BRI S/T .....	55
J4300 and J6300, BRI U .....	55
LED states .....	43, 46, 49, 57
provisioning .....	90
RJ-45 connector pinouts .....	202
ISDN provisioning .....	90
<i>See also</i> ISDN BRI ports	

## J

J-Flow license .....	136
J-series .....	
autoinstallation .....	129
establishing software connectivity .....	107
feature summary .....	6
hardware .....	9
hardware replacement .....	149
hardware return .....	179
HTTPS Web access .....	118
installation and connection .....	91
JUNOS Internet software overview .....	32
licenses .....	135
models available .....	3
network cables and connectors .....	189
PIMs .....	37
release notes, URL .....	xv
safety and compliance .....	205
site preparation .....	81
SSL access .....	118
user interfaces .....	61
J-Web configuration editor .....	62
autoinstallation .....	132
basic settings .....	122
capabilities .....	62
configuration hierarchy display .....	68
initial configuration .....	120
<i>See also</i> configuration	
J-Web interface .....	114
connecting .....	114
context-sensitive help .....	68, 74
help (?) icon .....	68
Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide	
version of JUNOS software .....	65
managing licenses .....	138
overview .....	61
page layout .....	65
sessions .....	69
starting .....	65
windows, multiple, unpredictable results with .....	69
<i>See also</i> J-Web configuration editor; Quick Configuration	
J-Web Quick Configuration <i>See</i> Quick Configuration	
J2300 .....	
AC power cord, replacing .....	165
boot devices .....	13
boot sequence .....	13
chassis .....	9
chassis types supported .....	40
components shipped .....	93
cooling system .....	19
DC cable attachment .....	103
DC power cable, replacing .....	165
Dual-Port E1 chassis .....	43
Dual-Port E1 with ISDN BRI chassis .....	44
Dual-Port G.SHDSL chassis .....	46
Dual-Port G.SHDSL with ISDN BRI S/T chassis .....	47
Dual-Port Serial chassis .....	41
Dual-Port Serial with ISDN BRI chassis .....	42
Dual-Port T1 chassis .....	43
Dual-Port T1 with ISDN BRI chassis .....	44
electrical specifications .....	86
fans .....	19
front panel .....	14
hardware .....	9
hardware components .....	12
installation .....	94
interfaces supported .....	40
physical specifications .....	12
PIM overview .....	39
PIMs supported .....	40
ports supported .....	40
power system .....	18
Routing Engine .....	12
USB port .....	17
J4300 .....	
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM .....	55
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM .....	55
AC power cord, replacing .....	165
ADSL PIM .....	57
boot devices .....	26
boot sequence .....	26
chassis .....	20
components shipped .....	93
cooling system .....	31
DC cable attachment .....	104
DC power cable, replacing .....	165
Dual-Port E1 PIM .....	51
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM .....	54
Dual-Port Serial PIM .....	50
Dual-Port T1 PIM .....	51
fans .....	31
front panel .....	27
G.SHDSL PIM .....	59
hardware .....	20

hardware components .....	24	command modes .....	62
installation .....	97	command prompts <i>See</i> command prompts	
interfaces supported .....	49	connecting .....	120
physical specifications .....	25	context-sensitive help .....	74
PIM overview .....	49	editing keystrokes .....	73
PIMs supported .....	49	environment, changing .....	75
ports supported .....	49	idle time .....	76
power system .....	30	managing licenses .....	141
removable compact flash .....	29	overview .....	62
restricted access installation .....	31, 97	screen length .....	77
Routing Engine .....	25	screen width .....	77
USB port .....	28	starting .....	70
J6300		terminal type .....	77
4-Port ISDN BRI S/T PIM .....	55	working directory .....	76
4-Port ISDN BRI U PIM .....	55	<i>See also</i> CLI configuration editor	
AC power cord, replacing .....	173	JUNOS Internet software	
ADSL PIM .....	57	autoinstallation .....	129
boot devices .....	26	establishing connectivity .....	107
boot sequence .....	26	Internet Explorer, modifying for worldwide	
chassis .....	20	version .....	65
components shipped .....	93	licenses .....	136
cooling system .....	31	overview .....	32
DC cable attachment .....	105	Packet Forwarding Engine .....	32
DC power cable, replacing .....	174	processes .....	33
Dual-Port E1 PIM .....	51	release notes, URL .....	xv
Dual-Port E3 PIM .....	53	Routing Engine .....	32
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet PIM .....	54	worldwide version, modifying Internet Explorer	
Dual-Port Serial PIM .....	50	for .....	65
Dual-Port T1 PIM .....	51	JUNOScope application .....	35
Dual-Port T3 PIM .....	53	JUNOScript API	
fans .....	31	defining access (Quick Configuration) .....	118
front panel .....	27	management access .....	112
G.SHDSL PIM .....	59	<b>K</b>	
hardware .....	20	kernel .....	33
hardware components .....	24	key sequences, editing, in CLI .....	73
installation .....	97	<b>L</b>	
interfaces supported .....	49	labels, serial number .....	179
physical specifications .....	25	LAN ports <i>See</i> Fast Ethernet ports	
PIM overview .....	49	laptop <i>See</i> management device	
PIMs supported .....	49	lasers	
ports supported .....	49	beam warning .....	233
power supplies <i>See</i> power supplies, J6300		Class 1 product warning .....	231
removable compact flash .....	29	open aperture warning .....	234
restricted access installation .....	31, 97	safety guidelines .....	231
Routing Engine .....	25	lead in equipment, reclamation and recycling .....	248
USB port .....	28	leaf statements .....	72
JTAC (Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center)		LEDs	
contacting .....	177	ACTIVITY status .....	18, 41, 55
contacting for hardware return .....	181	ADSL PIM status .....	58
information required for hardware return .....	182	ADSL port status .....	58
Juniper Networks logo LED .....	14	ALARM .....	15
Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center <i>See</i> JTAC		blue, for router status .....	14
JUNOS CLI .....	120	Class 1 product warning .....	232
command completion .....	74		
command hierarchy .....	69		

- configuration ..... 17
  - E1 port status ..... 44, 46, 53
  - E3 port status ..... 54
  - Fast Ethernet port status ..... 18, 41, 55
  - G.SHDSL PIM status ..... 60
  - IN USE, for removable compact flash ..... 29
  - ISDN PIM status ..... 43, 46, 49, 57
  - ISDN port status ..... 57
  - J6300 power supply ..... 30
  - Juniper Networks logo ..... 14
  - LAN port status ..... 18, 41, 55
  - LINK/ SPEED status ..... 18, 41, 55
  - ONLINE status (ADSL PIM) ..... 58
  - ONLINE status (G.SHDSL PIM) ..... 60
  - ONLINE status (ISDN BRI PIMs) ..... 57
  - POWER ON ..... 16
  - safety warnings ..... 231
  - serial port status ..... 42–43, 51
  - SHDSL port status ..... 47, 49, 60
  - T1 port status ..... 44, 46, 53
  - T3 port status ..... 54
  - license infringement
    - identifying any licenses needed ..... 139
    - verifying license usage ..... 144
    - verifying licenses installed ..... 143
  - license keys
    - components ..... 137
    - displaying (CLI) ..... 145
    - displaying (J-Web) ..... 141
    - status ..... 139
    - version ..... 139
  - licenses ..... 135
    - adding (CLI) ..... 141
    - adding (J-Web) ..... 140
    - BGP route reflectors ..... 136
    - deleting (CLI) ..... 142
    - deleting (J-Web) ..... 140
    - displaying (CLI) ..... 143
    - displaying (J-Web) ..... 139
    - displaying usage ..... 144
    - DLSw ..... 136
    - downloading (J-Web) ..... 141
    - E1 ports ..... 137
    - Fast Ethernet LAN ports (no license required) ..... 137
    - Fast Ethernet PIM ports ..... 137
    - features requiring a license ..... 6
    - group ..... 140
    - infringement, preventing ..... 138
      - See also* license infringement
    - installed ..... 139
    - IPSec VPNs ..... 136
    - J-Flow traffic analysis ..... 136
    - JUNOS Internet software ..... 136
    - key ..... 137
      - See also* license keys
    - managing (CLI) ..... 141
    - managing (J-Web) ..... 138
    - NAT ..... 136
    - overview ..... 135
    - preparation for ..... 137
    - saving (CLI) ..... 142
    - serial ports ..... 137
    - stateful firewall filters ..... 136
    - T1 ports ..... 137
    - traffic analysis ..... 136
    - verifying ..... 142
    - verifying free ports ..... 139
    - See also* license infringement; license keys
  - Licenses page ..... 138
  - lifting guidelines ..... 225
  - lightening activity warning ..... 239
  - lights *See* LEDs
  - LINK/ SPEED LED ..... 18, 41, 55
  - lo0.0 ..... 110
  - loopback address ..... 110
    - defining (configuration editor) ..... 126
    - defining (Quick Configuration) ..... 117
  - lug *See* grounding lug
- ## M
- maintenance
    - AC power cord, replacing (J2300 or J4300) ..... 165
    - AC power cord, replacing (J6300) ..... 173
    - DC power cable, replacing (J2300 or J4300) ..... 165
    - DC power cable, replacing (J6300) ..... 174
    - DRAM modules ..... 161
    - PIMs ..... 150
    - power system (J6300) ..... 167
    - primary compact flash ..... 155
    - removable compact flash ..... 157
    - tools and parts required ..... 150
    - USB storage device ..... 159
    - warnings ..... 235
  - major (red) alarms
    - PIMs ..... 176
    - Routing Engine ..... 177
  - management access ..... 112
  - management device
    - connecting through J-Web ..... 114
    - connecting through the CLI ..... 122
    - connecting to J-Web ..... 115
  - management interface address
    - after initial configuration ..... 111
    - before initial configuration ..... 111
    - defining (configuration editor) ..... 126
    - defining (Quick Configuration) ..... 118
    - during initial configuration ..... 111
  - management interfaces
    - Fast Ethernet ..... 111
    - fe-0/0/0 ..... 111

loopback .....	110
PORT 0 .....	111
management software process .....	33
managing licenses .....	135
manuals	
comments on .....	xx
maximum configuration weight	
J4300 .....	25
J6300 .....	25
memory <i>See</i> compact flash; DRAM modules; USB	
mgd process .....	33
microkernel .....	33
middle pane .....	68
midplane, J4300 and J6300 .....	25
fan .....	31
minimum configuration weight	
J4300 .....	25
J6300 .....	25
minor (yellow) alarms	
alternative boot device .....	176
primary compact flash .....	176
Routing Engine .....	177
monoammonium phosphate .....	85
mounting brackets	
J2300 rack installation .....	97
J4300 and J6300 rack installation .....	98
wall installation (J2300 only) .....	96
mounting holes, spacing .....	83
multiple routers	
deploying <i>See</i> autoinstallation	
safe rack order .....	97

## N

NAT (Network Address Translation)	
license .....	136
Network Address Translation <i>See</i> NAT	
network cable pinouts .....	189
Network Time Protocol (NTP) server <i>See</i> NTP server	
network.conf file, default for autoinstallation ....	131–132
notice icons .....	xvi
NT1 device	
provisioning information .....	90
NTP server .....	109
defining (configuration editor) .....	125
defining (Quick Configuration) .....	117

## O

ON button .....	15
ONLINE LED	
ADSL PIM status .....	58
G.SHDSL PIM status .....	60
ISDN BRI PIM status .....	57
operating system <i>See</i> JUNOS Internet software	
operational mode	
commands .....	71

prompt (>) .....	71
------------------	----

## P

packaging, recycling .....	248
Packet Forwarding Engine .....	32
microkernel .....	33
packing materials	
packing a Services Router for shipment .....	183
packing components for shipment .....	184
saving .....	93
pages, layout in J-Web .....	65
parentheses, in syntax descriptions .....	xvii
PC <i>See</i> management device	
PCI bus .....	13, 26
personnel warning .....	208
Physical Interface Cards <i>See</i> PIMs	
Physical Interface Modules <i>See</i> PIMs	
PIC <i>See</i> PIMs	
PIM number, always 0 .....	153, 155
PIMs (Physical Interface Modules)	
4-Port ISDN BRI (J4300 and J6300) .....	55
ADSL (J4300 and J6300) .....	57
cables and connectors .....	189
Dual-Port E1 (J4300 and J6300) .....	51
Dual-Port E3 (J6300) .....	53
Dual-Port Fast Ethernet (J4300 and J6300) .....	54
Dual-Port Serial (J4300 and J6300) .....	50
Dual-Port T1 (J4300 and J6300) .....	51
Dual-Port T3 (J6300) .....	53
failure .....	176
G.SHDSL (J4300 and J6300) .....	59
installing .....	152
installing cables .....	154
J2300 fixed PIMs .....	39
J4300 field-replaceable PIMs .....	49
J6300 field-replaceable PIMs .....	49
LEDs <i>See</i> LEDs	
major (red) alarm .....	176
midplane to Routing Engine .....	25
overview .....	37
PIM number, always 0 .....	153, 155, 179
removing .....	151
replacing cables .....	154
serial number label .....	181
slot number, displayed as FPC number .....	153, 155
pinouts	
ADSL RJ-11 connector .....	202
DB-9 connector .....	199
EIA-530A DCE serial cable .....	194
EIA-530A DTE serial cable .....	193
ISDN RJ-45 connector .....	202
RJ-45 console connector .....	198
RJ-45 Routing Engine (Ethernet) connector .....	198
RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (crossover) .....	201



- RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (straight) . . . 200
  - RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (crossover) . . 200
  - RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (straight) . . . 200
  - RS-232 DCE serial cable . . . . . 191
  - RS-232 DTE serial cable . . . . . 190
  - RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE serial cable . . . . . 192
  - RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE serial cable . . . . . 191
  - SHDSL RJ-11 connector . . . . . 202
  - V.35 DCE serial cable . . . . . 196
  - V.35 DTE serial cable . . . . . 195
  - X.21 DCE serial cable . . . . . 197
  - X.21 DTE serial cable . . . . . 197
  - plug types, AC . . . . . 88
  - ports
    - ADSL *See* ADSL ports
    - cables, PIM, installing . . . . . 154
    - cables, WAN, removing . . . . . 154
    - console . . . . . 17
      - See also* console port
    - DS1 *See* T1 ports
    - DS3 *See* T3 ports
    - E1 *See* E1 ports
    - E3 *See* E3 ports
    - Fast Ethernet . . . . . 18, 28
      - See also* Fast Ethernet ports
    - free ports . . . . . 139
    - G.SHDSL *See* SHDSL ports
    - interface naming . . . . . 153, 155
    - ISDN *See* ISDN BRI ports
    - J2300 LAN . . . . . 18
    - J2300 types supported . . . . . 40
    - J2300 USB . . . . . 17
    - J4300 LAN . . . . . 28
    - J4300 types supported . . . . . 49
    - J4300 USB . . . . . 28
    - J6300 LAN . . . . . 28
    - J6300 types supported . . . . . 49
    - J6300 USB . . . . . 28
    - licenses . . . . . 137
    - lo0.0 . . . . . 110
    - PORT 0 . . . . . 111
    - serial *See* serial ports
    - SHDSL *See* SHDSL ports
    - T1 *See* T1 ports
    - T3 *See* T3 ports
  - power . . . . . 15
    - applying . . . . . 105
    - button . . . . . 15
    - connecting . . . . . 99
    - grounding requirement . . . . . 99
    - LED states . . . . . 16
    - power cables *See* DC power cables
    - power cords *See* AC power cords
    - removing . . . . . 105
    - requirements . . . . . 86
      - See also* AC power; DC power; power supplies; power system
  - power button . . . . . 15
  - power cables *See* DC power cables
  - power cords *See* AC power cords
  - POWER ON LED states . . . . . 16
  - power supplies, J6300
    - blank panel required in empty slot . . . . . 167
    - dedicated AC power feed requirement . . . . . 170
    - dedicated DC power feed requirement . . . . . 172
    - description . . . . . 30
    - installing AC . . . . . 170
    - installing DC . . . . . 171
    - LED states . . . . . 30
    - redundancy . . . . . 30
    - removing AC . . . . . 167
    - removing DC . . . . . 168
    - serial number label . . . . . 181
  - power system . . . . . 18
    - connecting . . . . . 100, 102
    - fan . . . . . 31
    - J2300 . . . . . 18
    - J4300 . . . . . 30
    - J6300 . . . . . 30
    - See also* AC power; DC power
  - preparing for installation . . . . . 81
  - processes, software
    - chassis process . . . . . 34
    - forwarding process . . . . . 34
    - interface process . . . . . 34
    - management process . . . . . 33
    - routing protocol process . . . . . 34
  - product disposal . . . . . 242
  - product overview . . . . . 3
  - prompt *See* command prompts; restart-after-upgrade prompt
  - provisioning an ISDN line . . . . . 90
- ## Q
- Quick Configuration
    - basic settings . . . . . 115
    - capabilities . . . . . 62
    - initial configuration . . . . . 114
    - Set Up page . . . . . 66
    - SSL page . . . . . 119
- ## R
- rack ears *See* mounting brackets
  - rack installation
    - general requirements . . . . . 82
    - J2300 . . . . . 96
    - J2300 mounting brackets . . . . . 97
    - J4300 . . . . . 97
    - J4300 and J6300 mounting brackets . . . . . 98
    - J6300 . . . . . 97

mounting holes, spacing .....	83
order of multiple routers .....	97
safety guidelines and warnings .....	226
securing rack to building .....	83
size requirements .....	82
support for front-mount rack .....	83
ventilation requirement .....	83
radio frequency interference (RFI), reducing .....	86
ramp angle requirement .....	230
RARP, for autoinstallation .....	133
read or write error, Routing Engine .....	177
reclamation and recycling .....	248
recycling Juniper Networks equipment .....	248
red asterisk (*) .....	68
redundant J6300 power supplies	
description .....	30
safety guidelines for power sources .....	213
regulatory compliance .....	205
release notes, URL .....	xv
removable compact flash <i>See</i> compact flash	
replacement	
AC power cord, (J6300) .....	173
AC power cord, (J2300 or J4300) .....	165
DC power cable, (J6300) .....	174
DC power cable, (J2300 or J4300) .....	165
DRAM modules .....	161
PIMs .....	150
power system (J6300) .....	167
primary compact flash .....	155
removable compact flash .....	157
tools and parts required .....	150
USB storage device .....	159
request chassis pic fpc-slot command .....	154
request system license add command .....	141
request system license delete command .....	142
request system license save command .....	142
required entry (J-Web) .....	68
rescue configuration, CONFIG button on front panel ...	16
reset button	
for restart <i>See</i> power button	
for return to factory configuration <i>See</i> CONFIG	
button	
resetting to factory configuration, with the CONFIG	
button .....	16
restart-after-upgrade prompt .....	76
Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) Directive,	
recycling equipment .....	248
Return Materials Authorization <i>See</i> RMA	
returning hardware .....	179
packing a Services Router for shipment .....	183
packing components for shipment .....	184
procedure .....	182
tools and parts required .....	183
Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP), for	
autoinstallation .....	133
RJ-45 connector pinouts	
console port .....	198
Routing Engine (Ethernet) port .....	198
RJ-45 to DB-9 serial port adapter .....	120
RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (crossover)	
pinouts .....	201
RJ-48 connector to DB-15 connector (straight)	
pinouts .....	200
RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (crossover)	
pinouts .....	200
RJ-48 connector to RJ-48 connector (straight)	
pinouts .....	200
RMA (Return Materials Authorization) .....	179
number .....	182
packing a Services Router for shipment .....	183
packing components for shipment .....	184
procedure .....	182
tools and parts required .....	183
RoHS (Restriction of Hazardous Substances) Directive,	
recycling equipment .....	248
root password	
characteristics .....	109
defining (configuration editor) .....	124
defining (Quick Configuration) .....	116
route reflectors, BGP, license .....	136
router <i>See</i> Services Router	
router.conf file, for autoinstallation .....	131
Routing Engine	
fan .....	31
fan failure .....	177
J2300 functions and components .....	12
J4300 functions and components .....	25
J6300 functions and components .....	25
kernel .....	33
major (red) alarm .....	177
midplane to PIMs .....	25
minor (yellow) alarm .....	177
read or write error .....	177
software component .....	32
too hot .....	177
too warm .....	177
routing protocol software process .....	34
rpd process .....	34
RS-232 DCE cable pinouts .....	191
RS-232 DTE cable pinouts .....	190
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE cable pinouts .....	192
RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE cable pinouts .....	191
rubber feet .....	95

## S

S/T port <i>See</i> ISDN BRI ports	
safety guidelines and warnings	
AC power .....	212
battery handling .....	236
DC power (general) .....	212

- DC power disconnection ..... 213
- DC power wiring sequence warning ..... 215
- DC power wiring terminations warning ..... 217
- DC power, grounding requirements and  
warning ..... 215
- DC power, redundant power supplies ..... 213
- electrical ..... 211
- general ..... 207
- grounded equipment ..... 218
- in case of electrical accident ..... 219
- installation ..... 225
- jewelry removal ..... 237
- lasers and LEDs ..... 231
- levels ..... 205
- lightening activity ..... 239
- maintenance and operation ..... 235
- multiple power supplies (J6300 only) ..... 219
- operating temperature ..... 240
- power disconnection ..... 221
- product disposal ..... 242
- rack-mounting ..... 226
- ramps ..... 230
- read installation instructions ..... 225
- telecommunications cord ..... 223
- TN power system ..... 222
- safety standards ..... 244
  - fire safety ..... 84
- sample configuration, for basic connectivity ..... 127
- saving licenses (CLI) ..... 142
- screen length, CLI, setting ..... 77
- screen width, CLI, setting ..... 77
- screw and anchor capacity, for wall installation ..... 95
- SDX application ..... 35
- Secure Sockets Layer *See* SSL
- Serial Line Address Resolution Protocol (SLARP), for  
autoinstallation ..... 133
- serial number
  - chassis components, label ..... 179
  - PIMs ..... 181
  - power supply ..... 181
- serial ports
  - autoinstallation on ..... 130
  - cables and connectors ..... 189
  - EIA-530A DCE pinouts ..... 194
  - EIA-530A DTE pinouts ..... 193
  - J2300 ..... 41
  - J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port) ..... 42
  - J2300 (with ISDN BRI U port) ..... 42
  - J4300 and J6300 ..... 50
  - LED states ..... 42–43, 51
  - license ..... 137
  - RS-232 DCE pinouts ..... 191
  - RS-232 DTE pinouts ..... 190
  - RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DCE pinouts ..... 192
  - RS-422/449 (EIA-449) DTE pinouts ..... 191
  - V.35 DCE pinouts ..... 196
  - V.35 DTE pinouts ..... 195
  - X.21 DCE pinouts ..... 197
  - X.21 DTE pinouts ..... 197
- service provider, contacting for ISDN provisioning ..... 90
- Services Router
  - autoinstallation ..... 129
  - backup ..... 110
  - blue status LED ..... 14
  - clearance ..... 81
  - dimensions ..... 82
  - establishing software connectivity ..... 107
  - grounding a DC-powered model ..... 102
  - grounding an AC-powered model ..... 100
  - hardware ..... 9
  - hardware replacement ..... 149
  - hardware return ..... 179
  - HTTPS Web access ..... 118
  - installation and connection ..... 91
  - licenses ..... 135
  - multiple, deploying *See* autoinstallation
  - network cables and connectors ..... 189
  - operating environment ..... 83
  - overview ..... 3, 6
  - packing for shipment ..... 183
  - PIM overview ..... 37
  - powering on and off ..... 105
  - preparation checklist ..... 90
  - safety and compliance ..... 205
  - site preparation ..... 81
  - software ..... 32
  - SSL access ..... 118
  - unpacking ..... 92
  - user interfaces ..... 61
- sessions, J-Web ..... 69
- set cli commands ..... 75
- Set Up page ..... 66
  - field summary ..... 116
- setup
  - configuration editor ..... 120
  - Quick Configuration ..... 114
  - requirements ..... 113
- SHDSL ports
  - J2300 ..... 46
  - J2300 (with ISDN BRI S/T port) ..... 47
  - J4300 and J6300 ..... 59
  - LED states ..... 47
  - LED states on a G.SHDSL chassis ..... 49
  - LED states on a G.SHDSL PIM ..... 60
  - RJ-11 connector pinouts ..... 202
- shipping carton
  - contents ..... 93
  - packing a Services Router for shipment ..... 183
  - packing components for shipment ..... 184
  - saving ..... 93

show chassis alarms command .....	176
show chassis fpc pic-status command .....	153, 155
show chassis hardware command .....	179
show cli command .....	75
show system license command .....	143–144
show system license keys command .....	145
show system storage command .....	160
shutdown	
graceful .....	16, 105
immediate .....	16, 105
side pane .....	68
signaling limitations .....	86
site preparation	
checklist .....	90
electrical wiring guidelines .....	85
fire safety .....	84
for desktop and wall installation .....	82
for rack installation .....	82
guidelines .....	81
operating environment .....	83
power requirements .....	86
size	
J2300 .....	12
J4300 .....	25
J6300 .....	25
requirements for rack installation .....	82
SLARP, for autoinstallation .....	133
slot number, PIM, displayed as FPC number ....	153, 155
software .....	32
features .....	32
licenses <i>See</i> licenses	
<i>See also</i> JUNOS Internet software	
specifications	
AC electrical connection .....	87
AC power cords .....	87
DC electrical connection .....	88
DC power cables .....	88
electrical .....	86
environmental .....	83
grounding cable .....	99
grounding lug .....	99
J2300 hardware .....	12
J4300 hardware .....	25
J6300 hardware .....	25
serial PIM cables and connectors .....	189
SSH	
defining (configuration editor) .....	124
defining access (Quick Configuration) .....	118
management access .....	112
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)	
management access .....	112
Quick Configuration .....	118
SSL 3.0 option, disabling on Internet Explorer for worldwide version of JUNOS software .....	65
SSL page .....	119
field summary .....	120
standards compliance .....	244
startup	
J-Web interface .....	65
JUNOS CLI .....	70
Services Router .....	105
stateful firewall filters license .....	136
statements, configuration types .....	72
status .....	15
autoinstallation .....	134
license key .....	139
<i>See also</i> LEDs	
STATUS LEDs	
ADSL ports .....	58
E1 ports .....	44, 46, 53
E3 ports .....	54
ISDN BRI ports .....	43, 46, 49
ISDN ports .....	57
serial ports .....	42–43, 51
SHDSL ports .....	47, 49, 60
T1 ports .....	44, 46, 53
T3 ports .....	54
storage media	
replacing the primary compact flash .....	155
replacing the removable compact flash .....	157
replacing the USB storage device .....	159
support, technical <i>See</i> technical support	
symmetric high-speed digital subscriber line	
<i>See</i> SHDSL	
syntax conventions .....	xvi
system overview	
hardware .....	9
software .....	32
system time .....	109
defining (Quick Configuration) .....	117
synchronizing (configuration editor) .....	125
synchronizing (Quick Configuration) .....	117

## T

T1 ports	
J2300 .....	43
J2300 (with ISDN BRI U port) .....	44
J4300 and J6300 .....	51
LED states .....	44, 46, 53
license .....	137
RJ-48 cable pinouts .....	199
T3 ports	
BNC connector pinouts .....	202
J6300 .....	53
LED states .....	54
task bar .....	68
technical support	
contacting JTAC .....	xx
contacting JTAC for hardware return .....	181

information required for hardware return ..... 182  
 telecommunications line wire gauge ..... 223  
 telnet  
   defining access (Quick Configuration) ..... 118  
   management access ..... 112  
 temperature  
   required for operation ..... 84  
   Routing Engine, too hot ..... 177  
   Routing Engine, too warm ..... 177  
   warning ..... 240  
 terminal block  
   DC-powered J2300 ..... 103  
   DC-powered J4300 ..... 104  
   DC-powered J6300 ..... 105  
 terminal type, setting ..... 77  
 terminology  
   autoinstallation ..... 129  
   basic connectivity ..... 107  
 TFTP, for autoinstallation ..... 130  
 thermal output ..... 84  
 time *See* system time  
 time zone ..... 109  
   defining (configuration editor) ..... 124  
   defining (Quick Configuration) ..... 116  
 TN power system ..... 222  
 tolerances, environmental ..... 84  
 tools and equipment  
   for component replacement ..... 150  
   for hardware return ..... 183  
   for installation ..... 92  
 top pane ..... 67  
 traffic analysis license ..... 136  
 Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP), for  
   autoinstallation ..... 130  
 troubleshooting a Services Router, hardware  
   components ..... 175  
   *See also* LEDs  
 turning on a Services Router ..... 105  
 Type C fire extinguishers ..... 84  
 types of configuration statements ..... 72

## U

U port *See* ISDN BRI ports  
 universal serial bus *See* USB  
 unpacking the router ..... 92  
 URLs  
   release notes ..... xv  
   return and repair policies ..... 182  
   support ..... 177  
 USB (universal serial bus)  
   J2300 USB port ..... 17  
   J4300 USB port ..... 28  
   J6300 USB port ..... 28  
   storage device, installing ..... 161  
   storage device, removing ..... 160

usb0 *See* USB  
 user interfaces  
   feature comparison ..... 62  
   J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) ..... 35  
     *See also* J-Web interface  
   JUNOS command-line interface (CLI) ..... 35  
     *See also* JUNOS CLI  
   JUNOScope application ..... 35  
   overview ..... 61  
   preparation ..... 64  
   SDX application ..... 35

## V

V.35 DCE cable pinouts ..... 196  
 V.35 DTE cable pinouts ..... 195  
 ventilation requirement ..... 81  
 verification  
   active licenses ..... 143  
   autoinstallation ..... 133  
   basic connectivity ..... 127  
   license usage ..... 144  
   licenses ..... 142  
 version  
   license key ..... 139  
 VPN license, for IPSec ..... 136

## W

wall installation (J2300 only) ..... 95  
   mounting brackets ..... 96  
   mounting requirement ..... 82  
   screw and anchor capacity ..... 95  
 warnings  
   battery handling ..... 236  
   DC power disconnection ..... 213  
   DC power plant and chassis ground ..... 89  
   DC wiring sequence ..... 215  
   DC wiring terminations ..... 217  
   DC-powered J2300 routers, trained personnel  
     access only ..... 94  
   DC-powered J4300 and J6300 routers, restricted  
     access installation only ..... 85  
   earthed mains socket (Norway and Sweden  
     only) ..... 219  
   electrical ..... 210  
   ESD strap to prevent router damage ..... 10, 20  
   general ..... 207  
   grounded equipment ..... 218  
   installation ..... 225  
   jewelry removal ..... 237  
   laser and LED ..... 231  
   levels defined ..... 205  
   lightening activity ..... 239  
   maintenance and operational ..... 235  
   multiple power supply disconnection ..... 219  
   operating temperature ..... 240

personnel .....	208	J6300 .....	25
power disconnection .....	221	rack-mount requirements .....	82
product disposal .....	242	windows, J-Web, unpredictable results with multiple ...	69
rack-mounting requirements .....	226	wire gauge .....	
ramp angle .....	230	for grounding cable .....	99
read installation instructions .....	225	for telecommunications lines .....	223
telecommunications lines .....	223	wiring guidelines .....	
TN power system .....	222	DC wiring sequence warning .....	215
Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE)		DC wiring terminations warning .....	217
Directive, recycling equipment .....	248	radio frequency interference (RFI) .....	86
Web access, secure .....	118	signaling limitations .....	86
Web browser, modifying Internet Explorer for		suppressing electromagnetic interference (EMI) ...	86
worldwide version of JUNOS software .....	65	working directory, setting .....	76
WEEE (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment)			
Directive, recycling equipment .....	248	<b>X</b>	
weight .....		X.21 DCE cable pinouts .....	197
J2300 .....	12	X.21 DTE cable pinouts .....	197
J2300 two-person installation recommendation ...	96		
J4300 .....	25		
J4300 and J6300 two-person installation			
recommendation .....	97		